

# Practical Guide to English Usage

*Comparing and Contrasting English and Catalan*

Language Service, Universitat Oberta de Catalunya



© Fundació per a la Universitat Oberta de Catalunya, March 2014  
Language Service, Universitat Oberta de Catalunya  
Av. Tibidabo 39–43, Barcelona, 08035

Design: Manel Andreu



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Spain Licence. You may copy, distribute, transmit and adapt the work under the same or a similar licence to this one provided you attribute the work. The full licence can be consulted here: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/es/deed.en>.

## **Servei Lingüístic de la Universitat Oberta de Catalunya**

The Universitat Oberta de Catalunya (Open University of Catalonia, UOC) Language Service was opened in 1995, at the same time as the University itself. Since the start of the University's activities it has played an important role in the tasks of editing and translating the texts produced for the University's Virtual Campus and teaching materials. Likewise, the Language Service has worked to produce guidelines to help cover the language needs and to respond to the doubts that inevitably arise when dealing with large amounts of documents, as is the case at the UOC.

# Practical Guide to English Usage

## Table of Contents

<b>Presentation</b> .....	11
<b>Introduction</b> .....	13
<b>Spelling and punctuation</b> .....	15
1. Syllabification (separation of syllables) .....	15
2. Punctuation marks .....	15
2.1. Apostrophe .....	16
2.2. Comma .....	17
2.3. Semicolon .....	18
2.4. Full stop (AmE: period) .....	19
2.5. Colon .....	19
2.6. Ellipses (suspension dots) .....	20
2.7. Question mark .....	20
2.8. Exclamation mark (AmE: exclamation point) .....	21
2.9. Dashes .....	21
2.10. Hyphen .....	21
2.11. Parentheses .....	23
2.12. Box brackets (square brackets) [], curly brackets {} and angle brackets <> .....	24
2.13. Quotation marks (single and double) .....	24
3. Diacritical marks (accents and the diaeresis/umlaut) .....	25
<b>Morphology</b> .....	27
1. Nouns .....	27
1.1. Noun formation .....	27
1.1.1. Nouns derived from adjectives .....	27
1.1.2. Nouns derived from verbs .....	28
1.1.3. Nouns derived from other nouns .....	32
1.2. Noun + noun .....	34
1.3. Plural nouns .....	34
1.3.1. Regular plural nouns .....	35
1.3.2. Irregular plural nouns .....	36
1.4. Capitalization .....	38
1.5. Formation of the Saxon genitive .....	39

<b>2. Adjectives</b>	41
2.1. Adjective formation	41
2.1.1. Adjectives derived from nouns	41
2.1.2. Adjectives derived from verbs	46
2.2. Comparative and superlative adjectives	47
2.3. Compound adjectives	48
<b>3. Determiners</b>	51
<b>4. Pronouns</b>	52
<b>5. Verbs</b>	53
5.1. Verb formation	53
5.1.1. Verbs derived from adjectives	53
5.1.2. Verbs derived from nouns	54
5.2. Verb forms	56
5.2.1. The <b>-s</b> form	56
5.2.2. The <b>-ing</b> form	58
5.2.3. The <b>-ed</b> form	59
5.2.4. The verb <b>Be</b>	61
5.3. Verb contractions	62
<b>6. Adverbs</b>	63
<b>7. Demonyms (gentilics)</b>	64
7.1. Country demonyms	64
7.2. City demonyms	67
<b>Syntax</b>	69
<b>1. Nouns</b>	69
1.1. The Saxon genitive	69
1.2. Animal names	72
1.3. Partitives	73
1.3.1. Quality partitives	73
1.3.2. Quantity partitives	74
1.4. Collective nouns	75
1.5. Noun + noun	75
<b>2. Adjectives</b>	78
2.1. Adjective order	78
2.1.1. Attributive adjectives	78
2.1.2. Predicative adjectives	81
2.2. Possessive adjectives (and pronouns)	82
2.3. Quantifying adjectives (and adverbs)	85
2.4. Comparative and superlative adjectives (and adverbs)	89

2.4.1. <i>More</i> and <i>most</i> .....	89
2.4.2. <i>Fewer, fewest, less</i> and <i>least</i> .....	90
2.4.3. Comparative and superlative adjectives .....	90
2.4.4. Irregular comparative and superlative adjectives .....	91
2.4.5. Proportional comparative constructions .....	91
2.4.6. Use of subject and object pronouns in comparisons .....	92
2.5. Participial and gerundial adjectives .....	92
2.6. Interrogative adjectives .....	93
2.6.1. The difference between <i>which</i> and <i>what</i> .....	94
2.6.2. The interrogative adjective <i>whose</i> .....	94
2.6.3. Use of <i>which, what</i> and <i>whose</i> in indirect questions .....	94
3. Determiners .....	95
3.1. Articles .....	95
3.1.1. The definite article <i>the</i> .....	95
3.1.2. The indefinite articles <i>a</i> and <i>an</i> .....	96
3.2. Demonstrative determiners .....	96
3.3. Indefinite determiners .....	97
3.3.1. Universal determiners .....	97
3.3.2. Affirmative determiners .....	99
3.3.3. Non-affirmative determiners .....	99
3.3.4. Elective determiners .....	100
3.3.5. Negative determiners .....	100
3.3.6. Alternative determiners .....	101
3.3.7. The predeterminer <i>half</i> .....	101
4. Pronouns .....	102
4.1. Personal pronouns .....	102
4.1.1. Nominative personal pronouns .....	102
4.1.2. Objective personal pronouns .....	103
4.1.3. Singular <i>they</i> .....	103
4.2. The pronoun <i>it</i> .....	103
4.2.1. Anticipatory <i>it</i> .....	104
4.2.2. Identifying <i>it</i> .....	104
4.2.3. <i>It</i> referring to time, weather and distance .....	104
4.3. Interrogative pronouns .....	105
4.3.1. <i>Who</i> and <i>what</i> as subjects .....	105
4.3.2. <i>Who</i> and <i>what</i> as direct objects .....	105
4.3.3. <i>Who</i> and <i>what</i> as prepositional objects .....	105
4.4. Relative pronouns .....	106
4.4.1. Adjectival relative pronouns .....	106
4.4.2. Nominal relative pronouns .....	109
4.4.3. Interrogative pronouns and adverbs used as relatives .....	110

4.5. Indefinite pronouns (and adverbs) .....	110
4.5.1. Universal indefinite pronouns .....	111
4.5.2. Affirmative indefinite pronouns .....	111
4.5.3. Non-affirmative indefinite pronouns .....	112
4.5.4. Negative indefinite pronouns .....	112
4.5.5. Other indefinite pronouns .....	113
4.6. Reflexive and reciprocal pronouns .....	113
4.6.1. Reflexive pronouns .....	113
4.6.2. Reciprocal pronouns .....	115
4.7. Translation of the Catalan pronouns <i>ho</i> , <i>en</i> and <i>hi</i> .....	115
4.7.1. Translation of the Catalan pronoun <i>ho</i> .....	115
4.7.2. Translation of the Catalan pronoun <i>en</i> .....	119
4.7.3. Translation of the Catalan pronoun <i>hi</i> .....	121
5. Verbs .....	122
5.1. Verb tenses .....	122
5.1.1. Simple present and present continuous .....	123
5.1.2. Simple past and past continuous .....	124
5.1.3. Present perfect and present perfect continuous .....	125
5.1.4. Past perfect and past perfect continuous .....	126
5.1.5. Present and past subjunctive .....	126
5.1.6. Future .....	127
5.1.7. Conditional .....	131
5.2. Non-affirmative constructions .....	133
5.3. Question tags and short answers .....	135
5.3.1. Question tags .....	135
5.3.2. Short answers .....	136
5.4. Use of interrogative adverbs .....	136
5.5. Use of interrogative pronouns and adjectives .....	136
5.6. Interrogative adverbial expressions .....	138
5.7. Modal verbs .....	140
5.7.1. <i>Can, could, be able to, be allowed to</i> .....	141
5.7.2. <i>May</i> and <i>might</i> .....	143
5.7.3. <i>Will, shall, be going to, be to</i> .....	144
5.7.4. <i>Must, have to, be supposed to, should, ought to, have got to</i> .....	146
5.7.5. <i>Would rather</i> .....	149
5.7.6. <i>Had better</i> .....	149
5.7.7. <i>Be about to</i> .....	150
5.7.8. <i>Dare</i> and <i>need</i> .....	150
5.8. Prepositional verbs .....	150
5.9. Adverbial verbs (phrasal verbs) .....	154
5.10. Use of infinitives .....	157
5.10.1. Use of the bare infinitive .....	157
5.10.2. Use of the full infinitive .....	158



5.11. Use of gerunds (present participles) .....	159
5.12. Use of past participles .....	162
5.13. Imperatives .....	163
<b>6. Adverbs</b> .....	164
6.1. Position of adverbs .....	164
6.2. Adverbs of manner .....	165
6.3. Adverbs of place and direction .....	168
6.4. Adverbs of time .....	172
6.4.1. Frequency adverbs .....	172
6.4.2. Adverbs of relative time .....	173
6.4.3. Adverbs of specific time .....	174
6.5. Adverbs of affirmation and doubt .....	176
6.5.1. Adverbs of affirmation .....	176
6.5.2. Adverbs of doubt .....	176
6.6. Adverbs of degree .....	177
6.7. Interrogative adverbs .....	177
6.8. Conjunctive adverbs .....	177
6.9. Adverbs modifying adjectives or other adverbs .....	179
<b>7. Prepositions</b> .....	180
7.1. Prepositions of place .....	180
7.2. Prepositions of time .....	183
7.3. Prepositions of movement .....	185
7.4. Placement of prepositions .....	187
<b>8. Conjunctions</b> .....	188
8.1. Coordinating conjunctions .....	188
8.2. Correlative conjunctions .....	189
8.3. Subordinating conjunctions .....	189
8.4. The conjunction <i>that</i> .....	193
8.5. The conjunctions <i>if</i> and <i>whether</i> .....	193
<b>Style</b> .....	197
<b>Introduction</b> .....	197
<b>1. Abbreviations, acronyms and symbols</b> .....	198
1.1. Abbreviations .....	198
1.2. Acronyms .....	199
1.3. Symbols .....	201
<b>2. Capitalization</b> .....	203
2.1. General conventions .....	203
2.2. People .....	204
2.3. Places .....	204
2.4. Things .....	205
2.5. UOC-specific usage .....	208

<b>3. Type</b>	210
3.1. Bold	210
3.2. Italics	210
3.3. Underlining	212
3.4. Miscellaneous	212
<b>4. Numbers</b>	213
4.1. Numbers written as words	213
4.2. Numbers written as figures	214
4.3. Ranges	216
4.4. Times and dates	216
4.5. Roman numerals	218
<b>5. Lists, tables and figures</b>	219
5.1. Lists	219
5.2. Tables	220
5.3. Figures	221
<b>6. Bibliographical references</b>	222
6.1. The Oxford system	222
6.2. Other referencing systems	225
<b>7. Criteria for translations into English</b>	226
7.1. General conventions	226
7.2. Names of people	226
7.3. Names of places	227
7.4. Names of things	229
<b>8. UK/US differences</b>	234
8.1. Spelling	234
8.2. Dates	239
8.3. Punctuation	240
8.4. Prepositions and articles	242
8.5. Vocabulary	243
8.6. Helpful links	243
<b>9. Gender</b>	244
<b>10. Names and forms of address</b>	246
 <b>Bibliography</b>	 248

## Presentation

The following guide comes in response to the language needs that have arisen at the Universitat Oberta de Catalunya (Open University of Catalonia, UOC) since its founding. These needs regarding the English language have been met by the University's Language Service.

This guide provides a comprehensive review of issues with the language that could be resolved by consulting textbooks or dictionaries, but which are brought together here in one volume and linked to the texts produced at the University. This guide is also special and unique in the way it links its contents and examples to the Catalan language. It offers guidance for those problematic aspects of the language that are often found when revising or translating the texts produced at the University: academic and administrative documents, websites, opinion articles, teaching materials, emails, etc.

When applying the criteria from the different sections of this guide, we always bear in mind that the original text has an author who has left their imprint and any subsequent handling of the language should ensure the highest levels of consistency in the document without losing sight of the original meaning of the text.

Generally speaking, the examples herein are taken from texts that have been revised by the Language Service, and reflect the desire to bring coherency to the documents handled while being careful not to make more corrections than strictly necessary.

Imma Sánchez  
Director, Language Service

## Presentació

La guia que us presentem a continuació és fruit de les necessitats lingüístiques que han sorgit a la Universitat Oberta de Catalunya (UOC) des que es va crear i que el Servei Lingüístic ha estat encarregat de satisfer adequadament pel que fa a l'anglès.

D'una banda, aquesta guia és un recordatori d'algunes qüestions de llengua que, si bé es podrien resoldre consultant gramàtiques i diccionaris, recollides en un volum i relacionades amb la documentació de la Universitat donen una visió global del ventall de dubtes que poden aparèixer i, al mateix temps, fan que la guia es converteixi en un mòdul especial i singular perquè el contingut i els exemples es relacionen amb la llengua catalana. D'altra banda, és una orientació en els casos vacil·lants, que sovint es presenten a l'hora de fer les revisions i les traduccions dels textos de la Universitat: documents acadèmics i administratius, espais web, articles d'opinió, materials docents, missatges de correu electrònic, etc.

A l'hora d'aplicar els criteris dels diferents apartats de la guia, sempre tenim en compte que els textos tenen un autor que hi ha posat una intenció i que qualsevol tractament lingüístic posterior ha d'intentar aportar la màxima homogeneïtat al document final mirant de no desviar-se del sentit del text original.

En general, el recull d'exemples que hi hem incorporat és extret de textos que s'han revisat al Servei Lingüístic i respon a la intenció d'ajudar a unificar cada un dels textos tenint cura a no fer més correccions de les necessàries.

Imma Sánchez  
Directora del Servei Lingüístic

## **Introduction**

### **Content**

The contents of this **Practical Guide to English Usage** are designed to provide support for members of the university community who need to write in English. The Guide is based on the work carried out by the Language Service over the years since the UOC's founding to produce similar guides to aid the work of those writing in Catalan and Spanish at the University.

### **Organization**

The Guide has been divided into four main sections: Spelling and punctuation, Morphology, Syntax and Style. These sections offer guidelines and examples for the proper use of the English language. They are designed to help writers with any level of competence in the language to overcome the common problems encountered with English. The Guide is not intended to be exhaustive, but to cover as many points as possible in a clear and easily understandable way. Each point has a brief introduction and examples of actual usage to guide writers.

### **Further information**

The Language Service has a webpage on the UOC's portal where you can find more resources on the Catalan and Spanish languages. The address is as follows:

[uoc.edu/serveilinguistic](http://uoc.edu/serveilinguistic)

### **Target audience**

This Guide is designed, above all, for university students, faculty, researchers and staff who have to write in English. Nonetheless, it is also designed to be of use to all those who are interested in improving their level of competence in English, and to Catalan speakers in particular.

## Contributors

This Guide was commissioned by the UOC's Language Service. Sections 1, 2 and 3 were written by Martin Louis Hevly, of VISCA.com, author of the five-volume *Gramàtica anglesa*, a reference work for Catalan-speakers interested in learning more about the English language, and section 4 by Kari Friedenson, a freelance writer, editor and translator based in Barcelona. The Language Service's experts, Alba Corral Serramià, David Cullen, Pilar Gispert-Saüch Viader and Xavier Marzal Doménech, then contributed by editing and adapting the initial text to the university context.

## Key

Words in bold are either key points that need to be highlighted or examples of correct use of the language, eg **learning**.

Words and phrases that have been crossed out show erroneous use of the language, eg ~~ours~~ **friends**.

The points where the English is being compared and contrasted to the Catalan are highlighted by the word CATALAN in small capitals. Catalan translations used to illustrate examples are in italics, eg *punt*.

The following abbreviations are used in this Guide.

BrE → British English

AmE → American English

Internal references to other sections of the Guide.

Sp → Spelling and punctuation

Mo → Morphology

Sy → Syntax

## Spelling and punctuation

This section looks at the common difficulties that writers may encounter with the spelling of words in English. These include English's irregular separation of syllables or use of the apostrophe to indicate omissions. There are also sub-sections to highlight the differences between punctuation in English and CATALAN.

### 1. Syllabification (separation of syllables)

The division of syllables in English is extremely complex because English is not written as it is spoken. For example, we pronounce **learning** /'lə:nɪŋ/ but we separate it learn-ing. The separation method depends on the etymology and spelling of the word. Even most native English speakers occasionally need to consult a dictionary to know definitely how a word should be separated.

As is the case in CATALAN, all doubled consonants are generally separated: **rub-ber**, **broc-coli**, **ped-dle**, **scuf-fle**, **smug-gle**, **yel-low**, **gram-mar**, **ten-nis**, **cop-per**, **cor-rect**, **fos-sil**, **glut-ton**, **guz-zle**.

The suffixes **-ing** and **-er** are almost always separated, except when following a doubled consonant. So, **tub-ing**, **spac-ing**, **hold-ing**, **brief-ing** or **grudg-ing**, but, **run-ning**, **pas-sing**, **bet-ting**, **run-ner**, **pas-ser**, **bet-ter**, etc.

There are a few words ending in **-ling** and **-ler** for which this rule also does not apply. The most important are **an-gling**, **crack-ling**, **cy-cling**, **dan-gling**, **kin-dling**, **sti-fling**, **twin-king** and **wres-tling**, **an-gler**, **han-dler**, **knuck-ler**, **ram-bler**, **sam-pler**, **spar-kler**, **sprin-kler**, **tum-bler**, **whis-tler** and **wran-gler**.

We might also mention words ending in the suffix **-ling** for which, obviously, the **-ing** ending is not a suffix: **dar-ling**, **duck-ling**, **dump-ling**, **earth-ling**, **ink-ling**, **sap-ling**, **seed-ling**, **sib-ling**, **star-ling**, **ster-ling**.

Compound words are of course separated between the words: **bag-man**.

If you are in doubt, consult a good dictionary. Here, for example, is the entry in Webster's Dictionary for learning showing both its syllabification and pronunciation: **learn-ing** (/ 'lə:nɪŋ/).

### 2. Punctuation marks

The use of punctuation marks in English and CATALAN is quite similar, though there are differences. In the following thirteen sections we will give a brief description of the use of punctuation marks in English, paying special attention to those cases in which it differs from that of CATALAN.

## 2.1. Apostrophe

The most important use of the apostrophe in English is in contractions, ie constructions in which a letter or group of letters is elided. Contractions are nearly always used in oral English. In written English they are generally considered to give a more relaxed and informal tone to the writing; they should therefore be avoided if this is not the intention of the writer.

Some common examples of contractions are:

Between a pronoun and the following verb forms: **am, are, is, have, has, had, will** and **would**:

**I'm, she's (she is or she has), you've, they'd (they had or they would)**

Between all auxiliary verbs, except **am**, and **not**:

**aren't, isn't, wasn't, weren't, haven't, hasn't, don't, doesn't, didn't, can't, couldn't, shan't, shouldn't, won't, wouldn't, mustn't**

Because the verbs **is** and **are** can be contracted with both the personal pronouns and the adverb **not**, negative constructions using these elements can be expressed in two ways: for example, **You aren't thinking = You're not thinking; She's not here = She isn't here.**

In informal style, apostrophes are used to form contractions between the words **how, when, where, why, who, what** and **that** and the auxiliaries **is, has, have, did, will** and **would**. However, not all combinations are possible.

The words **how, when, where, why, who, what** and **that** can all contract with **is**:

**How's he doing? When's the meeting? Where's your brother? Why's that?  
Who's she? What's going on? That's funny.**

The auxiliaries **have** and **has** are generally limited to contractions with **how, where, who** and **what**; **has** can also be contracted with **that**:

**How've you been? Where've they gone? Who've they seen? What've we  
got here? Where's he gone? Who's fallen? What's he done? That's been used.**

The auxiliary **did** can be contracted with **how, where, why** and **who**:

**How'd (How did) you get there? Where'd they take my clothes? Why'd  
you lie to me? Who'd you see?**

The auxiliary **will** can be contracted with **who, what** and **that**:

**Who'll know? What'll happen? That'll be nice.**

The auxiliary **would** can only be contracted with **who**:

**Who'd like more cake?**

Other common contractions include:

**bo's'n (boatswain), fo'c's'le (forecastle), ha'penny (half-penny),  
jack-o'-lantern (jack of the lantern), ma'am (madam), o'clock (of the  
clock), rock 'n' roll (rock and roll), will-o'-the-wisp (will of the wisp) and  
young'un (young one)**



Besides their use in contractions, apostrophes are also used to mark the Saxon genitive (see section Sy 1.1.) and in the plural of letters:

**Tom's, Neus's, the Virtual Library's website.**  
**How many i's are there in Mississippi?**

## 2.2. Comma

As is the case in CATALAN, in English the comma is used in the following contexts:

### To separate enumerations

Examples:

**The assignment requires us to think, write and speak.**  
**The University's governing team meets with students in China, Mexico, Brussels, Santo Domingo and Puerto Rico.**

As shown in the examples above and in line with the UOC Language Service's recommended style, a comma is normally not used before the last element in a series, that is, before the conjunction **and**. An exception is made, however, if the sentence would otherwise be ambiguous:

**The months with the most connections are October and November, and March, April and May, coinciding with the start of the semesters.**

### Before a coordinating conjunction

Examples:

**Our physics teacher is receiving an award next week, and we're having a party to celebrate it.**  
**English has very few verb forms, but their various functions often cause problems.**

The comma is normally omitted if the coordinated sentences are short:

**My name is Esteve and I work at the University.**

### Before or after subordinate and prepositional clauses

The comma is generally used when the subordinate or prepositional clause precedes the main clause, or, if following the main clause, when the main clause is long or complex:

**Since you're here, you might as well help me.**  
**While I agree with your goals, I abhor your methods.**  
**If we come to the extreme, our society will come to resemble the type of society that Hobbes described.**  
**Under the new concept of education, schools are no longer places to teach, but rather places to learn.**  
**The teachers' group has agreed to go on strike next Wednesday, even if the official union position is against it.**

The comma is not generally used if the subordinate or prepositional clause is short and follows the main clause, or, in the case of prepositional clauses, if the clause is very short:

The evaluation is complex because there are different kinds of impacts.  
I'll do it even if they tell me not to.  
In Seattle people live well.  
After dinner we went for a walk.

### In parenthetical expressions

Examples:

My mother, who lives in Scotland, is coming to stay with us next week.  
Roger, noticeably excited, began to speak.  
He came in and, looking him up and down, told him off.

### In elisions

Examples:

Sweden is a grand country; and its capital, a beautiful city.  
Italy is famous for her composers and musicians, France, for her chefs  
and philosophers, and Poland, for her mathematicians and logicians.

### When addressing another person

Examples:

Hey, Joe, where are you going?  
Listen, honey, they're playing our song.

### In interjections and asides

Examples:

Good grief, what a mess!  
Your comments, if you don't mind my saying so, reveal an astonishing  
ignorance of the situation.

### In the separation of digits

It is important to keep in mind that, unlike CATALAN, English uses commas to separate figures larger than 9999: 10,000; 25,950, etc. (in CATALAN, 10.000; 25.950, etc.). Moreover, English uses a point to separate decimals, whereas CATALAN uses a comma. Compare: \$525,429.50 (525.429,50 \$).

## 2.3. Semicolon

The semicolon is used in English exactly as it is used in CATALAN; specifically, it is used in the following three cases.

To separate two closely related sentences

It was the best of times; it was the worst of times.  
Women's conversation is cooperative; men's is competitive.

A semicolon is often used before adverbial conjuncts such as **however**, **on the other hand**, **otherwise**, etc.

Schools have considerable autonomy; however, they must meet certain objectives.  
We'll fight the eviction; otherwise we'll be homeless.

To separate elements in a series when the elements are long or complex, or when they include other punctuation marks (especially commas)

**A study was done; next, an interactive consultation; and lastly, a digital terrain model was introduced.**

**Of these three special prizes, one is for projects; one is for products and one is for services.**

## 2.4. Full stop (AmE: period)

The punctuation mark called *punt* in CATALAN has various names in English. When used to indicate the end of a sentence or in abbreviations, it is called **full stop** in BrE and **period** in AmE. When used as a decimal separator it is generally pronounced **point** (eg 6.2 is pronounced **six point two**). Finally, when used to separate internet protocol addresses and named web addresses, it is called **dot**: **69.94.110.70** is pronounced **sixty-nine dot ninety-four dot one ten dot seventy**; **google.com** is pronounced **google dot com**.

Its use is exactly the same as in CATALAN, with the exception that CATALAN uses a comma rather than a point to separate decimals (eg **\$650.50**, **650,50 \$**). However, there are questions of style:

In BrE the full stop is normally omitted after titles and in initialisms – abbreviations pronounced as letters – (**Mr, Ms, Dr, USSR**, etc.), whereas it is normally included in AmE (**Mr., Ms., Dr., U.S.S.R.**, etc.). However, the full stop is never used in acronyms (abbreviations pronounced as words, such as **NATO**: /'neɪtəʊ/).

In AmE, full stops are used inside quotation marks even when they are not part of the quoted sentence; in BrE, the punctuation indicates whether the full stop forms part of the quotation. Compare:

**“Carefree” means “free from care or anxiety”. (BrE)**

**“Carefree” means “free from care or anxiety.” (AmE)**

## 2.5. Colon

As is the case in CATALAN, a colon is used to indicate that what follows is a demonstration, an example or a consequence of what is referred to before; sometimes it is simply an enumeration of elements.

Examples:

**I know one thing: I’m never going to live in a big city.**

**Please send photocopies of the following documents: your passport, your driving licence and your birth certificate.**

In BrE, the first word following a colon is always in lower case, unless there is some other reason for capitalizing it. In AmE, it can also be capitalized if what follows is a complete sentence. Compare:

**BrE: I’ve just had some good news: my brother-in-law has been offered a job.**

**AmE: I’ve just had some good news: My brother-in-law has been offered a job.**

Colons are also used for speech in scripts:

**Groucho: How many children do you have?**

**Contestant: Sixteen.**

**Groucho: Sixteen! That's amazing!**

**Contestant: I love my wife very much.**

**Groucho: I love my cigar, but I take it out every once in a while.**

Unlike CATALAN, English usually uses a comma before quotations:

**I believe it was Pope who said, "To err is human, to forgive divine".**

*Em penso que va ser Pope que va dir: "Errar és humà, perdonar és diví".*

An exception is made when the quote is in apposition, when it explains what comes before:

**He reminded me of Alexander Pope's words: "To err is human, to forgive divine".** (The quote explains what Alexander Pope said.)

Also unlike CATALAN, which uses the point, in English the colon is used to separate hours, minutes and seconds:

**The file was last modified at 12:35:10.**

*Es va modificar l'arxiu per última vegada a les 12.35.10.*

Finally, the colon is used to separate chapters and verses in the Bible and other sacred texts: **Matthew 7:12, Sura 5:18.**

## 2.6. Ellipses (suspension dots)

As in CATALAN, ellipses are used in English to indicate a pause, an incompleteness, a reticence or an interruption in the sentence. They are also used to indicate that a part of a quotation has been omitted. Examples:

**I'm sure he's a charming young fellow, but...**

**Don't count your chickens...**

**If she'd only get better... or die.**

**"I'm broke; can you lend me..." "Don't even think about it!"**

**In the Times it says, "Prisoners from allied countries... were due to be released Thursday."**

Unlike in CATALAN, in English ellipses should not be used as a synonym for **etc.**

*S'hi inclouen alguns tipus de noms (composició, finalitat, pertinença...).*

**Certain nouns (composition, finality, belonging, etc.) are included.**

Finally, an ellipsis at the end of a sentence with no sentence following should be followed by a period (for a total of four dots).

**They talk a lot, but when it's time to get down to work....**

## 2.7. Question mark

As in CATALAN, the question mark is used in English to signal that the sentence should be pronounced in an interrogative tone of voice. It is never used initially.

Examples:

**Who goes there?**  
**Why do women not choose to study ICTs?**  
**Where do you want to search?**

## 2.8. Exclamation mark (AmE: exclamation point)

As in CATALAN, the exclamation mark is used to indicate wonder, surprise and other significant emotions.

Examples:

**Hooray!**  
**Help!**  
**Good grief!**  
**What a pity!**  
**Do whatever you are inspired to do, and share your ideas!**  
**This has been an excellent two months!**  
**Don't touch that wire!**  
**Now you've done it!**

## 2.9. Dashes

Dashes are used, both in English and in CATALAN, to signal a parenthetical thought. In English, some style guides suggest that an unspaced em dash (—) be used (eg **We thought — or wanted to think— that the train was late**), while others recommend that the shorter en dash (–) be used with spaces on either side (eg **We thought – or wanted to think – that the train was late**). The UOC Language Service recommends the latter style.

Unlike in CATALAN, in English double quotes are used in dialogues, rather than en dashes:

**"We are concerned with how to employ the technology properly," said the director of the programme.**

*–Ens preocupa com s'han de fer servir les tecnologies adequadament –va dir el director del programa.*

## 2.10. Hyphen

Hyphens are generally used in four contexts in English:

between elements in certain numbers;  
after prefixes and before suffixes;  
between compound words;  
to indicate that a word has been divided at the end of a line.

Concerning the fourth use, see section Sp 1.

### Numbers

As in CATALAN, the hyphen is used to separate compound numbers between twenty-one and ninety-nine; it is also used for the ordinal numbers in this range:

**twenty-one, twenty-two... ninety-nine; twenty-first, twenty-second...  
ninety-ninth**

Note that, unlike in CATALAN, in English the hyphen is not used to separate a single digit and hundreds: we write **four hundred**, not **four-hundred**.

The hyphen also comes between elements in fractions, unless either the numerator or denominator already contains a hyphen:

**a one-third share, a three-quarter turn, a five-eighths inch screw**  
(hyphen in the numerator) **twenty-one hundredths lead**  
(hyphen in the denominator) **three one-thousandths calcium**

The hyphen is not used when a fraction is followed by a preposition:

**three eighths of an inch, four fifths of the sample, one millionth of a gram**

### Prefixes and suffixes

In English, hyphens are used with prefixes and suffixes to support ease of reading, a concept that is somewhat subjective. Definitive rules for their use do not exist and examples such as **mini-skirt** and **miniskirt** are both perfectly correct. Moreover, British and American usage varies somewhat, so when in doubt, the writer should consult a dictionary. Nonetheless, there are certain cases in which a hyphen is always used:

After the prefixes **all-**, **ex-**, **half-**, **quasi-** and **self-**:

**all-knowing, ex-minister, half-fare, quasi-scientific, self-adhesive**

When a prefix comes before a capital letter or number:

**pro-German, non-EC countries, anti-American demonstrations,  
post-Napoleonic Europe, pre-1500 English literature**

When the prefix is added to a word that already has a hyphen:

**a pseudo-open-minded attitude, non-Spanish-speaking Catalans**

A hyphen is also added after a prefix that precedes a two-word combination; the space between these two words then becomes hyphenated: **Blue Period Picasso** becomes **pre-Blue-Period Picasso**.

The hyphen is also mandatory in the following cases:

When the combination prefix + word could be confused with another word with the same spelling: **re-count** (count again), **recount** (tell).

When the prefix is a single letter or number:

**U-boat, T-square, 10-speed bicycle, 8-cylinder engine**

Preceding the suffix **-elect**:

**president-elect**

In short, hyphens are nearly always used when their lack would cause confusion. This is especially the case when the last letter of the prefix is the same as the first of the following word:

**anti-imperialism, après-ski, bird-dog, get-together, knock-kneed,  
non-negotiable, part-time, pre-election, sloe-eyed, test-tube and water-repellent**

### Compound words

The formation of compound words is quite complex and is discussed in detail in sections Mo 1.2. (Noun + noun) and Mo 2.3. (Compound adjectives). In general, the use of the hyphen depends on the formation of the word: **firecracker** is written as one word because the two elements, **fire** and **cracker**, combine well and are easy to read, but **fire-eater** is hyphenated to avoid the conjunction of the two e's. Moreover, the more a word establishes itself within the lexis, the more likely it is that the two elements that form the compound word will combine.

Some common compound nouns that are generally hyphenated are:

**passer-by, dry-cleaning, x-ray, do-it-yourself, turn-over, pen-friend, t-shirt**

Another class of hyphenated nouns are those that have been derived from prepositional or adverbial verbs. Some common examples are:

**go-between, run-around and write-up.**

Similarly to CATALAN, certain repetitive expressions are always hyphenated, such as the following:

**south-southeast, north-northwest (etc.), fender-bender, goody-goody,  
no-no, tom-tom and yo-yo.**

Compounds using the Saxon genitive are also frequently hyphenated:

**bull's-eye, cat's-paw, crow's-nest, death's-head and hand's-breadth**

The term **in-law** and all its derivatives are always hyphenated:

**brother-in-law, daughter-in-law, father-in-law, mother-in-law,  
sister-in-law, son-in-law**

In the case of compound adjectives, if two words combine to modify a noun, they are usually hyphenated when they appear before the term. For example:

**a well-behaved child, cold-blooded murder, a low-cut dress and  
a free-and-easy relationship**

The formation of compound adjectives is covered in section Mo 2.3. Some common examples are:

**quick-tempered, heart-felt, nerve-racking, ready-made, out-going,  
class-conscious, blood-red and watered-down**

Finally, English uses the hyphen in expressions that combine a quantity with a measure, such as **five-mile walk, ten-foot pole, ten-dollar bill**, etc. Note that the measures are expressed in the singular.

### 2.11. Parentheses

As is the case in CATALAN, in English parentheses are used to set off comments, explanations and other supplementary information. Examples:

**The number of living languages (currently about 6000, by most estimates) is decreasing rapidly.**

**A total of 751 students (9% more than the previous semester) registered for one of the 33 courses on offer.**

## 2.12. Box brackets (square brackets) [], curly brackets {} and angle brackets <>

Box brackets, also called square brackets, are used in quoted text to insert additional explanatory information. Examples:

**We took them [the new plants] back to the nursery.  
I doubt whether non-GUI interfaces [see definition] will ever become popular.**

The expression [sic] indicates an error that is in the original:

**Between you and I [sic], I don't think it's going to work.**

Box brackets are also used in nested parenthetical expressions:

**Our three colleagues (Bill, Rosa [who you met last summer] and Hugh) will take care of the details.**

Curly brackets and angle brackets are normally only used in technical writing (mathematics, science, computer programming, etc.).

## 2.13. Quotation marks (single and double)

In English, quotation marks are used to set off direct speech, quotations, titles, and both special and improper words.

Examples:

**"What makes this model different is that we are one-hundred percent online," says the Vice President.  
"The only thing we have to fear," declared President Roosevelt, "is fear itself."  
That reminds me of Edison's famous words: "Genius is one percent inspiration and ninety-nine per cent perspiration."  
The Prime Minister condemned what he called "simple-minded solutions".  
Most programming languages have methods for creating "arrays".  
In English, nobody "does footing"; we jog.**

Quotation marks are also used to indicate irony:

**Only one party participates in the "elections".**

The UOC Language Service recommends use of single quotes for nested quotations. This is because, in many cases (especially when using ASCII characters), the single quote and the apostrophe use the same glyph. For example:

**The editor declared, "Describing the figures as 'disappointing' is an insult to the British people."  
"At some point you say 'I want to work for a top company,'" says Mr Horn.**



### 3. Diacritical marks (accents and the diaeresis/umlaut)

Here is a list of some of the most important English words that are generally written using diacritical marks, though in many cases they may appear without accents as well. In some cases the marks are useful in that they distinguish the accented word from a similarly spelled word with no accent: for example, **resume** = *reprendre* and **résumé** = *currículum*. The examples given below are all words borrowed from French.

Words normally written with diacritical marks		
à la carte	coup d'état	naïve
à la mode	croûton	négligée
après-ski	crème de menthe	purée
bric-à-brac	crêpe	pâté
bête noire	déjà vu	raison d'être
café	détente	rosé
canapé	exposé	résumé
cause célèbre	façade	sauté
château	fiancé	soufflé
cliché	fiancée	séance
consommé	hors d'œuvre	touché

# Practical Guide to English Usage

## Morphology

Morphology deals with the way in which words are formed. The following sections detail the way in which nouns, adjectives, determiners, pronouns and verbs are formed in English. The examples used highlight certain irregularities in their formation and their differences when compared to CATALAN.

### 1. Nouns

Nouns give names to people, things and ideas. They can be divided into common nouns, which identify generic examples (for example, **tree**), and proper nouns, which identify specific examples and take an initial capital letter (for example, **James**). The following section details some of the points that need to be taken into account when using nouns in English.

#### 1.1. Noun formation

As in CATALAN, in English nouns can be formed from adjectives, verbs and other nouns: for example, **happy** → **happiness** (*feliç* → *felicitat*), **write** → **writer** (*escriure* → *escriptor*) and **friend** → **friendship** (*amic* → *amistat*). A thorough treatment of suffixation is beyond the scope of this study, but in the following three divisions we will give examples of the most important suffixes used to derive nouns from adjectives, verbs and other nouns.

##### 1.1.1. Nouns derived from adjectives

Nouns derived from adjectives are generally abstract nouns expressing the quality of the adjective: for example, **importance** expresses the quality of being **important**.

The two most productive suffixes for forming nouns from adjectives are **-ance** and **-ence**, which derive from adjectives ending in **-ant** and **-ent**, respectively, and which correspond to the CATALAN suffixes *-ància* and *-ència*. (These two suffixes are also used to derive nouns from verbs; see Mo 1.1.2.)

Nouns derived from adjectives: <i>-ance</i>		
abundant → abundance	extravagant → extravagance	radiant → radiance
arrogant → arrogance	fragrant → fragrance	relevant → relevance
brilliant → brilliance	important → importance	reluctant → reluctance
distant → distance	instant → instance	vigilant → vigilance
elegant → elegance	irrelevant → irrelevance	

Nouns derived from adjectives: <i>-ence</i>		
absent → absence	evident → evidence	permanent → permanence
affluent → affluence	frequent → frequency	present → presence
belligerent → belligerence	innocent → innocence	prudent → prudence
decadent → decadence	intelligent → intelligence	sentient → sentience
eloquent → eloquence	lenient → lenience	silent → silence
eminent → eminence	negligent → negligence	violent → violence
equivalent → equivalence	patient → patience	

Other important suffixes used to derive nouns from Latin adjectives are **-ity**, which corresponds to the CATALAN suffix *-itat*, and **-acy**, which is used especially when deriving nouns from adjectives ending in **-ate**.

Nouns derived from adjectives: <i>-ity</i>		
able → ability	false → falsity	pure → purity
civil → civility	legal → legality	real → reality
dense → density	major → majority	sane → sanity
equal → equality	novel → novelty	virile → virility
final → finality	obese → obesity	

Nouns derived from adjectives: <i>-acy</i>		
accurate → accuracy	illegitimate → illegitimacy	supreme → supremacy
celibate → celibacy	private → privacy	vacant → vacancy
delicate → delicacy		

Finally, in the case of nouns derived from adjectives of Anglo-Saxon origin, the most productive suffix is **-ness**.

Nouns derived from adjectives: <i>-ness</i>		
bright → brightness	ill → illness	sick → sickness
fit → fitness	kind → kindness	thick → thickness
good → goodness	mad → madness	weak → weakness
hard → hardness	mean → meanness	well → wellness
high → highness	same → sameness	wet → wetness

### 1.1.2. Nouns derived from verbs

Two of the most common suffixes used to derive nouns from verbs are **-er** and **-or**, which correspond to the CATALAN *-dor* (and variants), and are used to describe the person or thing that performs the action described by the verb. The suffix **-er** is by far the more common of the two – there are literally thousands of **-er** nouns derived from verbs – and it is used with both Latin- and Anglo-Saxon-based words; the use of **-or** is generally limited to words of Latin origin. Because it is used less often, it is a good idea to study carefully the list of **-or** words.

Nouns derived from verbs: <i>-er</i>		
bake → baker	kill → killer	smoke → smoker
buy → buyer	open → opener	surf → surfer
dive → diver	pay → payer	talk → talker
drive → driver	play → player	use → user
heat → heater	race → racer	wait → waiter
help → helper	read → reader	walk → walker
hold → holder	ride → rider	wash → washer
joke → joker	sell → seller	write → writer
kick → kicker	serve → server	

Because many nouns and verbs share the same form (eg **work** means both *treball* and *treballar*), some words here also appear in the Nouns derived from other nouns list in Mo 1.1.3.

Nouns derived from verbs: <i>-or</i>		
abduct → abductor	convey → conveyor	govern → governor
act → actor	create → creator	mediate → mediator
agitate → agitator	credit → creditor	operate → operator
animate → animator	debt → debtor	sail → sailor
assess → assessor	dictate → dictator	sculpt → sculptor
audit → auditor	direct → director	translate → translator
capture → captor	edit → editor	vibrate → vibrator
conjure → conjuror	educate → educator	visit → visitor

Though less productive, the suffix **-ant** is also used with some verbs to describe the doer of an action.

Nouns derived from verbs: <i>-ant</i>		
apply → applicant	cool → coolant	inform → informant
assail → assailant	defend → defendant	lubricate → lubricant
assist → assistant	depend → dependant	occupy → occupant
attend → attendant	dispute → disputant	pollute → pollutant
celebrate → celebrant	dominate → dominant	react → reactant
claim → claimant	emigrate → emigrant	relax → relaxant
colour → colourant	enter → entrant	seal → sealant
combat → combatant	examine → examinant	serve → servant
confide → confidant	immigrate → immigrant	stimulate → stimulant

The suffix **-ee** is used to describe the one receiving the action of the verb. Examples:

Nouns derived from verbs: <b>-ee</b>		
arrest → arrestee	devote → devotee	parole → parolee
assign → assignee	draft → draftee	pay → payee
attend → attendee	employ → employee	refer → referee
award → awardee	induct → inductee	retire → retiree
deport → deportee	intern → internee	train → trainee
detain → detainee	nominate → nominee	trust → trustee

Two other very productive suffixes are **-tion**, used especially for verbs ending in **-ate**, and **-sion**, used especially after verbs ending in **-d** or **-de**, **-s** or **-t**. **-tion** corresponds to the CATALAN **-ció** and **-sion/-ssion** to the CATALAN **-sió/-ssió**. These generally designate an abstract noun describing the result of the action of the verb.

Nouns derived from verbs: <b>-tion</b>		
absolve → absolution	duplicate → duplication	negate → negation
agitate → agitation	educate → education	negotiate → negotiation
animate → animation	elevate → elevation	note → notion
approve → approbation	estimate → estimation	obligate → obligation
associate → association	execute → execution	operate → operation
attribute → attribution	fascinate → fascination	opposite → opposition
automate → automation	fornicate → fornication	penetrate → penetration
calculate → calculation	generate → generation	persecute → persecution
circulate → circulation	graduate → graduation	pollute → pollution
complete → completion	hesitate → hesitation	populate → population
conjugate → conjugation	humiliate → humiliation	promote → promotion
cooperate → cooperation	ignite → ignition	prosecute → prosecution
create → creation	imitate → imitation	radiate → radiation
cultivate → cultivation	indicate → indication	relate → relation
decorate → decoration	integrate → integration	rotate → rotation
dedicate → dedication	legislate → legislation	separate → separation
delegate → delegation	locate → location	terminate → termination
delete → deletion	medicate → medication	tolerate → toleration
designate → designation	meditate → meditation	translate → translation
devote → devotion	migrate → migration	vaccinate → vaccination
dictate → dictation	motivate → motivation	vegetate → vegetation
dominate → domination	narrate → narration	vibrate → vibration
donate → donation	navigate → navigation	

Nouns derived from verbs: <i>-sion/-ssion</i>		
admit → admission	discuss → discussion	permit → permission
cohere → cohesion	divert → diversion	persuade → persuasion
collide → collision	divide → division	possess → possession
concede → concession	erode → erosion	profess → profession
conclude → conclusion	evade → evasion	recede → recession
confess → confession	exclude → exclusion	revert → reversion
confuse → confusion	explode → explosion	revise → revision
converse → conversion	express → expression	submit → submission
corrode → corrosion	impress → impression	succeed → succession
decide → decision	intend → intension	suspend → suspension
depress → depression	invade → invasion	
deride → derision	omit → omission	

Other important suffixes that designate the action described by the verb are **-ance** and **-ence** (in CATALAN, *-ància/-ança* and *-ència/-ença*; see also Mo 1.1.1.), **-ment** (in CATALAN, *-ment*, but there is often a lack of correspondence) and **-al**.

Nouns derived from verbs: <i>-ance</i>		
accept → acceptance	continue → continuance	maintain → maintenance
acquaint → acquaintance	deliver → deliverance	observe → observance
allow → allowance	disturb → disturbance	perform → performance
annoy → annoyance	expect → expectance	pursue → pursuance
appear → appearance	govern → governance	remember → remembrance
assist → assistance	ignore → ignorance	repent → repentance
attend → attendance	illumine → illuminance	resist → resistance
avoid → avoidance	import → importance	suffer → sufferance
clear → clearance	inherit → inheritance	vary → variance

Nouns derived from verbs: <i>-ence</i>		
abstain → abstinence	differ → difference	occur → occurrence
coincide → coincidence	diverge → divergence	persist → persistence
compete → competence	emerge → emergence	precede → precedence
condole → condolence	excel → excellence	prefer → preference
confer → conference	exist → existence	refer → reference
confide → confidence	indulge → indulgence	reside → residence
consist → consistence	infer → inference	subsist → subsistence
defend → defence	obey → obedience	verge → vergence
depend → dependence	depend → dependence	

Nouns derived from verbs: <i>-ment</i>		
agree → agreement	enjoy → enjoyment	pay → payment
ail → ailment	equip → equipment	place → placement
amend → amendment	increase → increment	ship → shipment
amuse → amusement	judge → judgement	state → statement
argue → argument	move → movement	treat → treatment

Nouns derived from verbs: <i>-al</i>		
accrue → accrual	deny → denial	renew → renewal
approve → approval	deprive → deprival	rent → rental
arrive → arrival	dispose → disposal	revise → revisal
bury → burial	rebut → rebuttal	revive → revival
carouse → carousal	refuse → refusal	survive → survival
defer → deferral	remove → removal	

### 1.1.3. Nouns derived from other nouns

The most common suffix used to derive nouns from other nouns is **-er**, which indicates profession, residence, activity or origin. Note that, because many nouns and verbs share the same form, a word such as **worker** can be said to derive from both a noun and verb (**work** means both *treball* and *treballar*).

Nouns derived from other nouns: <i>-er</i>		
bank → banker	hat → hatter	report → reporter
bat → batter	heat → heater	review → reviewer
bloom → bloomer	hostel → hosteller	roof → roofer
blush → blusher	island → islander	room → roomer
boat → boater	jail → jailer	sand → sander
bomb → bomber	jewel → jeweller	shovel → shoveller
camp → camper	log → logger	speed → speeder
cream → creamer	London → Londoner	steam → steamer
dream → dreamer	mail → mailer	surf → surfer
dust → duster	mark → marker	toast → toaster
falcon → falconer	mill → miller	trap → trapper
field → fielder	murder → murderer	trip → tripper
fight → fighter	New York → New Yorker	truck → trucker
fish → fisher	oil → oiler	weed → weeder
forest → forester	paint → painter	weld → welder
garden → gardener	prison → prisoner	work → worker
gun → gunner	ranch → rancher	wreck → wrecker



The suffixes **-eer** and **-ster** are used to indicate persons involved with the noun in question.

Nouns derived from other nouns: <i>-eer, -ster</i>		
auctioneer	gamester	racketeer
engineer	mountaineer	trickster
gangster	mutineer	volunteer

Three common suffixes that convert nouns into abstract nouns are **-dom**, **-hood** and **-ship**.

Nouns derived from other nouns: <i>-dom, -hood, -ship</i>		
authorship	leadership	scholarship
brotherhood	manhood	sportsmanship
childhood	martyrdom	stardom
citizenship	membership	womanhood
fatherhood	motherhood	workmanship
friendship	neighbourhood	
kingdom	partnership	

The suffix **-ful**, when forming nouns, indicates quantity (eg **arm** → **armful**). This is also a productive suffix for deriving adjectives from nouns (see Mo 2.1.1.).

Nouns derived from other nouns: <i>-ful</i>		
cupful	glassful	plateful
eyeful	handful	roomful

Some common diminutive suffixes are **-et**, **-ette** and **-y**.

Nouns derived from other nouns: <i>-et, -ette, -y</i>		
booklet	droplet	piglet
cigarette	Johnny	ringlet
doggy	kitchenette	wavelet

## 1.2. Noun + noun

English often uses nouns to modify other nouns: for example, **horse race** means *cursa de cavalls* and **race horse** means *cavall de curses*. (For more information concerning these constructions, see section Sy 1.5.) As far as the morphology of these combinations is concerned, there are three possibilities: 1) separate words, as in the two previous cases; 2) combinations using a hyphen, such as **input-output**, and 3) fusions, such as **bloodstain**. In general, the more a certain combination establishes itself in the common language, the more likely it is to be written as one word. For example, **fire fighter** was originally written as two words, but has gradually evolved into both a hyphenated form (**fire-fighter**) and a single word (**firefighter**).

How the two nouns are spelled can also make a big difference: **policeman** is written as one word because the two elements of which it is composed, **police** and **man** combine well. However, its synonym, **police officer** is written as two words (or with a hyphen: **police-officer**) because the sequence **eo** in **policeofficer** looks strange to English speakers. Similarly, **racehorse** is now quite often written as a single word, whereas **horserace** is not; the combination **eh** is unusual in English, so the two elements in **racehorse** are easily distinguished, but the combination **er** is quite common and thus makes it difficult to see the separation in **horserace**.

Finally, we should also mention that a noun that modifies another noun is almost always written in the singular. Examples:

**car salesman**  
**tooth decay**  
**apple pickers**  
**a ten-dollar bill**

In fact, even some invariable plural nouns use a singular form when modifying another noun. Examples:

**pyjama tops**  
**scissor case**  
**trouser press**

Exceptions:

**arms control**  
**clothes closet**  
**glasses frames**  
**pants pockets**

## 1.3. Plural nouns

The great majority of plurals in English are regular, formed by adding the suffixes **-s** or **-es** to the noun. We will discuss the spelling of these forms in section Mo 1.3.1. As for the irregular plurals, there are five main categories, which we will study in section Mo 1.3.2.

### 1.3.1. Regular plural nouns

The majority of English nouns form the plural by adding the suffix **-s**. If the noun ending is voiced, the **s** is pronounced /z/ (like the **z** in the CATALAN word *zoo*); if the ending is unvoiced, the **-s** is pronounced /s/.

Voiced endings	Unvoiced endings
pea, peas	cup, cups
cow, cows	tape, tapes
game, games	cat, cats
job, jobs	plate, plates
deed, deeds	rock, rocks
bag, bags	smoke, smokes
ball, balls	
drum, drums	
bean, beans	
ear, ears	

An exception to the previous rule is that, when a noun ends in a sibilant sound, the suffix is written **-es** (unless the noun ends in **e**, in which case it is written **-s**). The sibilant terminations are:

- ze, -z, -se, pronounced /z/
- ge pronounced either /dʒ/ (like the *tg* in the word *metge*) or /j/ (like the *j* in the word *jove*)
- s, -ce, -se, pronounced /s/
- ch, pronounced /tʃ/ (like the *tx* in the word *cotxe*)
- sh /ʃ/ (like the *x* in the word *xeix*)

Examples:

prize, prizes  
 whizz, whizzes  
 bruise, bruises  
 judge, judges  
 garage, garages  
 bus, buses  
 face, faces  
 case, cases  
 match, matches  
 dish, dishes

If the noun ends consonant + **y**, the **y** is replaced with **i** and the suffix is **-es**. Examples:

**baby, babies**  
**agency, agencies**  
**lady, ladies**  
**sky, skies**  
**reply, replies**  
**army, armies**  
**city, cities**

### 1.3.2. Irregular plural nouns

In English there are five classes of nouns that form the plural irregularly:

nouns ending in **-f** or **-o**;  
 nouns that undergo a vowel change;  
 nouns that use the suffix **-en**;  
 nouns whose singular and plural forms are the same;  
 nouns borrowed from Latin and Greek.

What's more, there are two nouns that don't fit into any classification: **die, dice**; or **house**, in which the **s** is unvoiced (/hʌʊs/), has as its plural **houses**, in which the **s** becomes voiced (/hʌʊzɪz/).

Some nouns ending in **-f** or **-o** always form the plural by simply adding the suffix **-s**. Others always form the plural irregularly, either by changing the **-f** to **-ves**, in the case of nouns ending in **f**, or by adding **-es** in the case of those ending in **-o**. Finally, with a third group, both spellings are acceptable. The important thing is to remember which nouns are in the second group, those whose plurals are always irregular.

Nouns ending in <b>-f</b> that always form the plural changing the <b>-f</b> to <b>-ves</b>	Nouns ending in <b>-o</b> that always Form the plural adding <b>-es</b>
calf, calves	echo, echoes
elf, elves	embargo, embargoes
half, halves	hero, heroes
knife, knives	potato, potatoes
leaf, leaves	tomato, tomatoes
life, lives	torpedo, torpedoes
loaf, loaves	veto, vetoes
self, selves	
sheaf, sheaves	
shelf, shelves	
thief, thieves	
wife, wives	
wolf, wolves	

Nouns that form the plural by changing the vowel	Nouns that form their plural adding the suffix <i>-en</i>
foot, feet	brother, brethren (note that in this case <b>brother</b> means <i>confrare</i> , not <i>germà</i> )
goose, geese	child, children
louse, lice	ox, oxen
man, men	
mouse, mice	
tooth, teeth	
woman /'wʊmən/, women /'wɪmɪn/	

There are many nouns in English whose singular and plural forms are the same. This is especially true of certain animals and fish.

Nouns whose singular and plural forms are the same	
bison	salmon
cod	series
deer	species
fish	sheep
herring	shrimp
moose	trout
quail	

Many nouns in English that have been borrowed from Latin and Greek form their plural according to the rules of the original language. Others form their plurals regularly and, for a third group, both spellings are acceptable.

Nouns borrowed from Latin and Greek	
alga, algae	larva, larvae
analysis, analyses	parenthesis, parentheses
bacterium, bacteria	phenomenon, phenomena
crisis, crises	stimulus, stimuli
criterion, criteria	thesis, theses
hypothesis, hypotheses	

## 1.4. Capitalization

In general, the rules in English for the capitalization of nouns are the same as those in CATALAN. There are, however, some important differences which are marked with an asterisk.

English capitalizes nouns in the following cases:

Proper nouns

**Pau Casals, John Doe, Barcelona, Russia, Africa, the Pyrenees,  
Mount Everest, Lake Superior, Christmas, the Fourth of July,  
The New York Times, Reader's Digest, etc.**

Days, months, holidays and special days

**Monday\*, Tuesday\*, etc.  
January\*, February\*, etc.**

Languages, races, nationalities, etc. (ie *gentilicis*)

**French\*, English\*, Londoners\*, Catalans\*, Europeans\***

Religions, their adherents and sacred texts

**Christianity\*, Judaism\*, Hindus\*, Muslims\*, the Bible, the Koran**

Organizations, businesses, institutions, etc.

**the United Nations, the European Economic Community, Microsoft,  
Alaska Airlines, the European Central Bank, the Asian Institute  
of Technology**

Titles, when preceding proper names

**Prince Philip\*, Professor William Coll\*, Chief Inspector Andrew Dalziel\***

Points of the compass, when referring to geographic regions

**Seattle is located in the rainy Northwest\*.  
They searched for gold in the far North\*.**

School subjects, when referring to a specific course

**Social Studies 302  
Introduction to Physics**

But there is no capitalization for general reference (except, of course, languages)

**I'm studying philosophy and Spanish\*.**

Family members

A common noun referring to a family member is capitalized when it substitutes for the proper name of the person in question. Examples:

**Why did Mother\* scold you?  
I've just seen Grandmother\*.**

Note that these terms are only used when addressing other members of the same family; when we speak with non-family members, a possessive is used and there is no capitalization:

**Opened on the initiative of her maternal grandmother, the house passed  
to her mother and finally to her and it is she who is in charge of  
the business today.**

Street names:

**Basin Street\*, Third Avenue\*, 42nd Street\*, Sunset Strip\*, Thunder Road\***

### 1.5. Formation of the Saxon genitive

Regarding the morphology (and, we might add, the pronunciation) of the Saxon genitive, it is important to distinguish between proper nouns and common nouns. We will begin with the former.

#### Proper nouns

The Saxon genitive is usually formed by adding the suffix 's (apostrophe + s) to a proper noun. It is pronounced:

/z/ after a voiced consonant or vowel (eg **John's** /dʒɒnz/, **Mary's** /'mɛːrɪz/, **Maria's** /ma'riəz/),

/s/ after an unvoiced consonant (eg **Robert's** /'rɒbəts/, **Roc's** /rɒks/) and

/əz/, adding a syllable, after a sibilant (eg **Charles's** /'tʃɑːlɪz/, **Neus's** /'neusez/).

Plurals that refer to families are written with a single apostrophe:

**the Simpsons'** /sém'sənz/, **the Kennedys'** /kè'nə'diz/.

Finally, note that the Saxon genitive of compound names is written adding the apostrophe + s to the final element: **Alexander the Great's**, **King John the Fair's**, **Billy the Kid's**, etc.

#### Common nouns

The Saxon genitive of common nouns is formed adding apostrophe + s to singular nouns (eg **the boy's mother**) and the simple apostrophe to plural nouns ending in -s (eg **the boys' bicycles**). There is one important point to consider:

The Saxon genitive of a plural noun ending in -s is pronounced exactly the same as the singular Saxon form; that is, **boy's** and **boys'** are both pronounced /bɔɪz/. Note that this is exactly the opposite of what happens with proper nouns ending in -s, for which the pronunciation of the Saxon genitive is distinguished from that of name (eg **James** /dʒeɪmz/ and **James's** /dʒeɪmzəs /). The reason is that the -s at the end of proper nouns forms an integral part of these nouns, whereas the -s forming the plural of common nouns is merely a suffix.

Examples:

**Where once a teacher's primary role was to disseminate content, today their task is to help students make sense of it.**

**The new model stresses the students' learning.**

In the case of plural nouns not ending in -s, the Saxon genitive is formed normally, with the addition of apostrophe + s. The most important nouns in this category are **men**, **women** and **children**. Examples:

**The men's clothes are in room 270.**

**Sweden leads the way in women's rights.**

**There's too much violence in children's TV shows.**

As for compound nouns, the apostrophe + s is added to the last of the elements:

**Her mother-in-law's interference ruined their marriage.**

**The chemistry teacher's laboratory is on the third floor.**



## 2. Adjectives

Adjectives qualify and classify nouns. In other words, they describe qualities of people, things and ideas. The following section details some of the points that need to be taken into account when using adjectives in English.

### 2.1. Adjective formation

As is the case in CATALAN, English adjectives can be formed from nouns and verbs, eg **doubt** → **doubtful** (*dubte* → *dubtós*) and **read** → **readable** (*llegir* → *llegible*). A thorough treatment of suffixation is beyond the scope of this study, but in the following two sub-sections we will give examples of the most important suffixes used to derive adjectives from nouns and verbs.

#### 2.1.1. Adjectives derived from nouns

The most productive suffixes for deriving adjectives from nouns are:

- ful, (in CATALAN, *ple de* or a number of suffixes).
- ed, which indicates that the adjective is provided with or has the quality of the noun.
- ic, -ous, -al, -like and -ish, which indicate that the adjective has the quality described by the noun.
- ly and -y, which indicate qualities.
- less, which indicates that the adjective is lacking in the quality described by the noun.
- en, which indicates the material of which an object is made.

Adjectives derived from nouns: -ful		
art → artful	fruit → fruitful	sin → sinful
awe → awful	grace → graceful	skill → skilful
beauty → beautiful	harm → harmful	sorrow → sorrowful
care → careful	help → helpful	soul → soulful
cheer → cheerful	hope → hopeful	spite → spiteful
colour → colourful	joy → joyful	stress → stressful
deceit → deceitful	law → lawful	success → successful
delight → delightful	master → masterful	tact → tactful
disgrace → disgraceful	meaning → meaningful	taste → tasteful
doubt → doubtful	pain → painful	thought → thoughtful
dread → dreadful	peace → peaceful	trust → trustful
duty → dutiful	play → playful	truth → truthful
event → eventful	power → powerful	waste → wasteful
faith → faithful	resource → resourceful	will → wilful
fate → fateful	respect → respectful	wish → wishful
fear → fearful	rest → restful	wonder → wonderful
flavour → flavourful	right → rightful	wrong → wrongful
fright → frightful	shame → shameful	youth → youthful

**Adjectives derived from nouns: -ed**

age → aged	experience → experienced	privilege → privileged
arch → arched	feather → feathered	ring → ringed
bias → biased	fork → forked	spirit → spirited
bigot → bigoted	gift → gifted	spot → spotted
braid → braided	heat → heated	stripe → striped
can → canned	ice → iced	wall → walled
conceit → conceited	marble → marbled	wing → winged
crowd → crowded	mask → masked	wire → wired
culture → cultured	oil → oiled	wood → wooded
date → dated	point → pointed	wretch → wretched
disease → diseased	principle → principled	

**Adjectives derived from nouns: -ic**

academy → academic	cycle → cyclic	melody → melodic
acid → acidic	demon → demonic	meteor → meteoric
allergy → allergic	diabetes → diabetic	number → numeric
anarchy → anarchic	drama → dramatic	organ → organic
anaemia → anaemic	economy → economic	period → periodic
Arab → Arabic	empathy → empathic	poet → poetic
artist → artistic	galaxy → galactic	rhythm → rhythmic
atom → atomic	German → Germanic	Roman → Romanic
barbar → barbaric	Goth → Gothic	scene → scenic
centre → centric	graph → graphic	Semite → Semitic
citrus → citric	harmony → harmonic	sulphur → sulphuric
class → classic	hero → heroic	system → systemic
climate → climatic	history → historic	titan → titanic
comedy → comedic	hysteria → hysteric	volcano → volcanic
cosmos → cosmic	magnet → magnetic	
crypt → cryptic	majesty → majestic	

**Adjectives derived from nouns: -ous**

anxiety → anxious	glory → glorious	riot → riotous
bigamy → bigamous	grace → gracious	ruin → ruinous
bile → bilious	grief → grievous	space → spacious
bulb → bulbous	humour → humorous	study → studious
caution → cautious	joy → joyous	ulcer → ulcerous
covet → covetous	libel → libellous	usury → usurious
desire → desirous	lustre → lustrous	vapour → vaporous
envy → envious	lute → luteous	venom → venomous
fame → famous	nerve → nervous	vigour → vigorous
fibre → fibrous	pity → piteous	virtue → virtuous
fury → furious	pore → porous	wonder → wondrous
gas → gaseous	rigour → rigorous	zeal → zealous

**Adjectives derived from nouns: -al**

beast → bestial	fate → fatal	nature → natural
bride → bridal	front → frontal	norm → normal
brute → brutal	globe → global	race → racial
cause → causal	grade → gradual	rent → rental
centre → central	herb → herbal	space → spatial
cynic → cynical	line → lineal	try → trial
face → facial	magic → magical	use → usual
fact → factual	music → musical	

**Adjectives derived from nouns: -like**

business → businesslike	dream → dreamlike	life → lifelike
cat → catlike	god → godlike	war → warlike
child → childlike	lady → ladylike	workman → workmanlike

**Adjectives derived from nouns: -ish**

amateur → amateurish	fool → foolish	prude → prudish
ape → apish	freak → freakish	self → selfish
book → bookish	girl → girlish	sheep → sheepish
boor → boorish	imp → impish	slug → sluggish
boy → boyish	kitten → kittenish	snob → snobbish
child → childish	mule → mulish	style → stylish
fever → feverish	owl → owlsh	wasp → waspish
fiend → fiendish	pig → piggish	

Note that the **-ish** suffix is also used with colours: **greenish**, **reddish**, etc.

Adjectives derived from nouns: <i>-ly</i>		
beast → beastly	kind → kindly	queen → queenly
brother → brotherly	king → kingly	saint → saintly
cost → costly	leisure → leisurely	scholar → scholarly
coward → cowardly	low → lowly	shape → shapely
curl → curly	man → manly	sick → sickly
death → deathly	master → masterly	sister → sisterly
earth → earthly	month → monthly	time → timely
father → fatherly	mother → motherly	week → weekly
friend → friendly	neighbour → neighbourly	woman → womanly
ghost → ghostly	night → nightly	wool → woolly
god → godly	order → orderly	world → worldly
heaven → heavenly	poor → poorly	year → yearly
hour → hourly	quarter → quarterly	

Adjectives derived from nouns: <i>-y</i>		
air → airy	luck → lucky	snow → snowy
bag → baggy	milk → milky	soap → soapy
bitch → bitchy	mist → misty	squeak → squeaky
blood → bloody	mud → muddy	sugar → sugary
brain → brainy	oil → oily	summer → summery
cheek → cheeky	powder → powdery	sun → sunny
chunk → chunky	rain → rainy	sweat → sweaty
cloud → cloudy	risk → risky	thirst → thirsty
cream → creamy	rock → rocky	thrift → thrifty
dirt → dirty	room → roomy	touch → touchy
dream → dreamy	salt → salty	trick → tricky
dust → dusty	sand → sandy	water → watery
fish → fishy	sex → sexy	wax → waxy
freak → freaky	shine → shiny	wealth → wealthy
fun → funny	silk → silky	wind → windy
hair → hairy	sleep → sleepy	worth → worthy
itch → itchy	snoop → snoop	

**Adjectives derived from nouns: -less**

age → ageless	hope → hopeless	root → rootless
aim → aimless	humour → humourless	self → selfless
air → airless	job → jobless	sense → senseless
art → artless	joy → joyless	shame → shameless
base → baseless	law → lawless	shape → shapeless
blame → blameless	life → lifeless	sight → sightless
bottom → bottomless	limit → limitless	sleep → sleepless
breath → breathless	love → loveless	smoke → smokeless
care → careless	luck → luckless	speech → speechless
clue → clueless	match → matchless	spine → spineless
colour → colourless	meaning → meaningless	spot → spotless
cord → cordless	mercy → merciless	stain → stainless
count → countless	mind → mindless	sugar → sugarless
doubt → doubtless	mother → motherless	sun → sunless
effort → effortless	motion → motionless	taste → tasteless
end → endless	name → nameless	thank → thankless
fault → faultless	need → needless	thought → thoughtless
fear → fearless	odour → odourless	time → timeless
flaw → flawless	pain → painless	tire → tireless
form → formless	penny → penniless	tooth → toothless
gut → gutless	pity → pitiless	top → topless
hair → hairless	point → pointless	use → useless
harm → harmless	power → powerless	voice → voiceless
head → headless	price → priceless	weight → weightless
heart → heartless	purpose → purposeless	wing → wingless
heed → heedless	remorse → remorseless	wire → wireless
help → helpless	rest → restless	word → wordless
home → homeless	roof → roofless	worth → worthless

**Adjectives derived from nouns: -en**

ash → ashen	hemp → hempen	wax → waxen
earth → earthen	lead → leaden	wheat → wheaten
flax → flaxen	rot → rotten	wood → wooden
gold → golden	silk → silken	wool → woollen

### 2.1.2. Adjectives derived from verbs

The most productive suffixes for deriving adjectives from verbs are **-able** (in CATALAN, *-able* and *-ible*), **-ive** (in CATALAN, *-iu*, *-iva*), **-ant** and **-ent** (in CATALAN, *-ant*, *-ent* and *-int*).

Adjectives derived from verbs: <i>-able</i>		
adapt → adaptable	desire → desirable	pass → passable
admire → admirable	do → doable	pay → payable
adore → adorable	drink → drinkable	quote → quotable
advise → advisable	elect → electable	read → readable
agree → agreeable	endure → endurable	remove → removable
avail → available	excite → excitable	suit → suitable
bear → bearable	imitate → imitable	tolerate → tolerable
break → breakable	laugh → laughable	use → usable
count → countable	like → likeable	vary → variable
cure → curable	live → liveable	wash → washable
debate → debatable	love → lovable	work → workable
deny → deniable	move → movable	write → writable

Some adjectives derived from verbs ending in silent **e** can also be spelled including the **e** (for example, **like** → **likable** or **likeable**); however, the spelling without the **e** is more common. Also, there are some adjectives that spell the suffix **-ible**, such as **eat** → **edible** and **fail** → **fallible**.

Adjectives derived from verbs: <i>-ive</i>		
abort → abortive	defect → defective	invade → invasive
abuse → abusive	defend → defensive	invent → inventive
act → active	detect → detective	narrate → narrative
adapt → adaptive	direct → directive	negate → negative
adopt → adoptive	divide → divisive	object → objective
assert → assertive	effect → effective	offend → offensive
capture → captive	elect → elective	operate → operative
corrode → corrosive	exclude → exclusive	receive → receptive
create → creative	execute → executive	reduce → reductive
cure → curative	expand → expansive	resist → resistive
deceive → deceptive	expend → expensive	seduce → seductive
decide → decisive	explode → explosive	select → selective
deduct → deductive	imitate → imitative	talk → talkative

Note that adjectives derived from verbs ending in **-d** or **-de** are often, though not always, spelled with a **-sive** ending (**expend** → **expensive**, **exclude** → **exclusive**, etc.).

Adjectives derived from verbs: <i>-ant</i>		
abound → abundant	dominate → dominant	repent → repentant
accept → acceptant	expect → expectant	resonate → resonant
ascend → ascendant	exult → exultant	retard → retardant
descend → descendant	hesitate → hesitant	stagnate → stagnant
deviate → deviant	radiate → radiant	tolerate → tolerant
disinfect → disinfectant	relax → relaxant	vacate → vacant

Adjectives derived from verbs: <i>-ent</i>		
abhor → abhorrent	deter → deterrent	provide → provident
absorb → absorbent	differ → different	recur → recurrent
adhere → adherent	dissolve → dissolvent	reminisce → reminiscent
cohere → coherent	diverge → divergent	repel → repellent
coincide → coincident	emerge → emergent	reside → resident
compete → competent	excel → excellent	respond → respondent
confide → confident	exist → existent	resurge → resurgent
consist → consistent	indulge → indulgent	transcend → transcendent
correspond → correspondent	insist → insistent	urge → urgent
depend → dependent	luminesce → luminescent	
descend → descendent	persist → persistent	

## 2.2. Comparative and superlative adjectives

English one-syllable adjectives and two-syllable adjectives ending in **-y** generally form their comparatives and superlatives adding to the root the suffixes **-er** and **-est**, respectively.

Examples:

**slow, slower, (the) slowest**  
**happy, happier, (the) happiest**

When the suffixes **-er** and **-est** are added to adjectives, certain morphological changes occur.

The final consonant is doubled if it is preceded by a single vowel:

**big, bigger, (the) biggest**  
**fat, fatter, (the) fattest**  
**sad, sadder, (the) saddest**

If the adjective ends in consonant + y, the y is changed to i:

**funny, funnier, (the) funniest**  
**windy, windier, (the) windiest**  
**sly, slier, (the) sliest**

If the adjective ends in a silent e, this letter is dropped:

**lame, lamer, (the) lamest**  
**safe, safer, (the) safest**  
**wide, wider, (the) widest**

See also Sy 2.4.

### 2.3. Compound adjectives

In the same way that English uses nouns to modify other nouns (see Mo 1.2.), it also forms compound adjectives formed by the combination word + adjective.

The adjectives that form part of these compounds are of four types:

Compound adjectives in which the second element is formed body part + **-ed**.

Body part + <b>-ed</b> : <b>-blooded</b>	
blue-blooded	pure-blooded
cold-blooded	red-blooded
hot-blooded	

Body part + <b>-ed</b> : <b>-eyed</b>	
blue-eyed, green-eyed, etc.	eagle-eyed
clear-eyed	hawk-eyed
cold-eyed	sharp-eyed
cross-eyed	wide-eyed



<b>Body part + -ed: -faced</b>	
boldfaced	straight-faced
moonfaced	two-faced
poker-faced	

<b>Body part + -ed: -haired</b>	
fair-haired	shorthaired
longhaired	

<b>Body part + -ed: -handed</b>	
bare-handed	red-handed
empty-handed	right-handed
evenhanded	shorthanded
heavy-handed	single-handed
high-handed	sure-handed
left-handed	underhanded
openhanded	

<b>Body part + -ed: -headed</b>	
bigheaded	hardheaded
boneheaded	hotheaded
bubbleheaded	levelheaded
clearheaded	pigheaded
featherheaded	

<b>Body part + -ed: -hearted</b>	
bighearted	hardhearted
brokenhearted	kindhearted
chickenhearted	lighthearted
coldhearted	softhearted
downhearted	tenderhearted
fainthearted	wholehearted
halfhearted	

<b>Body part + -ed: -minded</b>	
absentminded	narrow-minded
broad-minded	open-minded
fair-minded	simpleminded
high-minded	single-minded

Body part + <i>-ed</i> : <i>-mouthed</i>	
closemouthed	mealy-mouthed
foulmouthed	

Compound adjectives in which the second element is a participle or gerund.

Participle	
custom-built	overcrowded
dry-cleaned	so-called
far-fetched	suntanned
handmade	typewritten
homemade	well-balanced
ill-advised	well-known
mass-produced	

Gerund	
backbreaking	nerve-racking
breathtaking	never-ending
easy-going	on-going
eye-catching	out-going
fast-acting	painstaking
good-looking	record-breaking
heart-breaking	spellbinding
long-lasting	up-coming

Compound adjectives in which the second element is a pure adjective.

Pure adjective: <i>-free</i>	
carefree	tax-free
duty-free	

Pure adjective: <i>-proof</i>	
bulletproof	rainproof
childproof	rustproof
dustproof	shockproof
fireproof	soundproof
foolproof	waterproof

Pure adjective: <i>-sick</i>	
airsick	homesick
carsick	lovesick
heartsick	seasick

Pure adjective: <i>others</i>	
accident-prone	war-weary
class-conscious	world-weary

Compound adjectives in which the second element is a colour adjective.

Colour adjective	
ash-blond	ice-blue
blood-red	jet-black
bottle-green	sea-green

The majority of these compounds are written with a hyphen, though in certain cases they have been combined into a single word (see Mo 1.2.).

### 3. Determiners

The English indefinite article **a** (pronounced /ə/, except when stressed, when it is pronounced /eɪ/) is spelled **an** (pronounced /ən/) when it precedes a word beginning with a vowel sound. Examples:

**a car** /ə kɑː/, **a hat** /ə hæt/, **a finger** /ə 'fɪŋɡə/, etc.  
**an apple** /ən 'ap(ə)l/, **an egg** /ən ɛɡ/, **an umbrella** /ən ʌm'brelə/, etc.

Therefore, the article is also spelled **an** when it comes before a silent **h** but is spelled **a** when it precedes initial **u**, **eu** and **ew**, when these are pronounced /ju/. Examples:

**an honour** /ən 'ɒnə/, **an hour** /ən 'aʊə/  
**a unit** /ə 'juːnɪt/, **a European** /ə jʊərə'piːən/

Finally, it should be kept in mind that these two forms are never used before plurals. The CATALAN plural indefinite articles *uns* and *unes* are translated in English by **some**. Example:

*unes sabates* = **some shoes**

The English definite article is always spelled **the**; it is pronounced /ðə/, except when it precedes a word beginning with a vowel sound, when it is pronounced /ði/. Examples:

**the car** /ðə kɑː/, **the hat** /ðə hat/, **the finger** /ðə 'fɪŋɡə/, etc.  
**the apple** /ði 'ap(ə)l/, **the egg** /ði ɛɡ/, **the umbrella** /ði ʌm'brelə/, etc.

It is also pronounced /ði/ when it comes before a silent **h** and /ðə/ when preceding initial **u**, **eu** and **ew**, when these are pronounced /ju/. Examples:

**the honor** /ði 'ɒnə/, **the hour** /ði 'aʊə/  
**the unit** /ðə 'juːnɪt/, **the Europeans** /ðə ʃʊərə'piːənz/

The demonstrative determiners **this** (*aquest -a*) and **these** (*aquests -es*) are often confused because of their pronunciation. **This** is pronounced /ðɪs/, rhyming with the Central CATALAN pronunciation of the word *més*. **These** is pronounced /ðiːz/ (the *z* pronounced as in the CATALAN word *zoo*), rhyming with the English word **please**.

The disjunctive determiners **either** and **neither** are pronounced /ˈiðə/ and /ˈniðə/ in BrE, and /'iːðə/ and /'niːðə/ in AmE.

The predeterminer **half** is pronounced /haf/ in AmE and /haːf/ in BrE. The **l** is always silent.

#### 4. Pronouns

The nominative personal pronouns in English can all be contracted with the present tense forms of the verb **be**, as well as with the auxiliary verbs **have**, **has**, **had**, **will** and **would**.

Singular	Plural
I'm, I've, I'd, I'll	we're, we've, we'd, we'll
you're, you've, you'd, you'll	you're, you've, you'd, you'll
she's, she'd, she'll	they're, they've, they'd, they'll
he's, he'd, he'll	
it's, it'd, it'll	

Observe that the **'d** contraction can stand for either **had** or **would** and that the **'s** contraction can stand for either **is** or **has**. There is seldom any ambiguity, however, because the contractions of **had** and **has** are always followed by a participle, **would** is always followed by an infinitive, and, in its auxiliary use, **be** is always followed by a gerund.

Remember not to confuse the form **it's**, which means **it is** or, less often, **it has**, with the possessive pronoun **its**, which indicates possession (eg **The UOC bases its educational model on the Virtual Campus**).

Note that the possessive personal pronouns in English are often formed adding an **s** to the possessive adjective: eg **your** → **yours**, **her** → **hers**, **our** → **ours**, etc. In this case the suffix has nothing at all to do with a plural, so these forms mustn't be used as attributive adjectives. Examples: **our friend** → **our friends**, not ~~**ours friends**~~.

## 5. Verbs

The following section details the different forms that verbs take in English.

### 5.1. Verb formation

As is the case in CATALAN, in English verbs can be formed from adjectives and nouns, eg **active** → **activate** (*actiu* → *activar*) or **origin** → **originate**. It is interesting to note that adjectives and nouns use the same suffixes when forming verbs.

#### 5.1.1. Verbs derived from adjectives

English uses the same suffixes to derive verbs from both adjectives and nouns. By far the most important is **-ize**; other important suffixes are **-en**, which is used almost exclusively with words of Anglo-Saxon origin (eg **hard** → **harden**), **-ate** (eg **active** → **activate**) and **-ify** (eg **false** → **falsify**).

Verbs derived from adjectives: -ize		
actual → actualize	industrial → industrialize	ritual → ritualize
brutal → brutalize	initial → initialize	rural → ruralize
capital → capitalize	intellectual → intellectualize	sensual → sensualize
central → centralize	internal → internalize	sentimental → sentimentalize
civil → civilize	legal → legalize	serial → serialize
commercial → commercialize	legitimate → legitimize	sexual → sexualize
conventional → conventionalize	local → localize	slender → slenderize
criminal → criminalize	marginal → marginalize	social → socialize
emotional → emotionalize	material → materialize	solemn → solemnize
equal → equalize	memorial → memorialize	special → specialize
eternal → eternalize	national → nationalize	sterile → sterilize
federal → federalize	natural → naturalize	tranquil → tranquillize
fertile → fertilize	neutral → neutralize	trivial → trivialize
final → finalize	penal → penalize	universal → universalize
formal → formalize	personal → personalize	urban → urbanize
general → generalize	phenomenal → phenomenalize	visual → visualize
ideal → idealize	polar → polarize	vital → vitalize
illegal → illegalize	politic → politicize	vocal → vocalize
immobile → immobilize	popular → popularize	volatile → volatilize
immortal → immortalize	random → randomize	vulgar → vulgarize
individual → individualize	rational → rationalize	

Verbs derived from adjectives: <i>-en</i>		
black → blacken	glad → gladden	slack → slacken
bright → brighten	hard → harden	smart → smarten
broad → broaden	light → lighten	smooth → smoothen
cheap → cheapen	like → liken	soft → soften
coarse → coarsen	live → liven	straight → straighten
crisp → crisp	loose → loosen	sweet → sweeten
damp → dampen	mad → madden	thick → thicken
dark → darken	moist → moisten	tight → tighten
dead → deaden	red → redden	tough → toughen
deaf → deafen	ripe → ripen	weak → weaken
deep → deepen	rough → roughen	white → whiten
fast → fasten	sad → sadden	wide → widen
fat → fatten	sharp → sharpen	worse → worsen
flat → flatten	short → shorten	
fresh → freshen	sick → sicken	

Verbs derived from adjectives: <i>-ate</i>		
active → activate	domestic → domesticate	potent → potentiate
antique → antique	different → differentiate	invalid → invalidate
authentic → authenticate	instant → instantiate	valid → validate

Verbs derived from adjectives: <i>-ify</i>		
diverse → diversify	intense → intensify	simple → simplify
false → falsify	just → justify	solid → solidify
French → Frenchify	pure → purify	vile → vilify
humid → humidify	rare → rarify	

### 5.1.2. Verbs derived from nouns

English uses the same suffixes to derive verbs from both nouns and adjectives. By far the most important is **-ize**: for example, **colony** → **colonize**. Other important suffixes are **-en**, which is used almost exclusively with words of Anglo-Saxon origin (eg **strength** → **strengthen**), **-ate** (eg **liquid** → **liquidate**) and **-ify** (eg **beauty** → **beautify**).

Verbs derived from nouns: <i>-ize</i>		
agony → agonize apology → apologize apostrophe → apostrophize author → authorize burglar → burglarize capital → capitalize category → categorize character → characterize colony → colonize computer → computerize critic → criticize crystal → crystallize custom → customize demon → demonize digit → digitize economy → economize empathy → empathize energy → energize epitome → epitomize	fantasy → fantasize fossil → fossilize harmony → harmonize hospital → hospitalize human → humanize ideal → idealize idol → idolize individual → individualize irony → ironize journal → journalize liquid → liquidize local → localize magnet → magnetize material → materialize memory → memorize miniature → miniaturize moisture → moisturize monopoly → monopolize motor → motorize	patron → patronize plastic → plasticize pressure → pressurize private → privatize revolution → revolutionize rubber → rubberize scandal → scandalize sermon → sermonize standard → standardize style → stylize summary → summarize symbol → symbolize sympathy → sympathize system → systemize terror → terrorize theory → theorize vapour → vaporize victim → victimize woman → womanize

Verbs derived from nouns: <i>-en</i>		
Christ → christen fright → frighten haste → hasten	heart → hearten height → heighten length → lengthen	strength → strengthen threat → threaten

Verbs derived from nouns: <i>-ate</i>		
alien → alienate assassin → assassinate calibre → calibrate captive → captivate carbon → carbonate chlorine → chlorinate comment → commentate design → designate fluoride → fluoridate	granule → granulate hyphen → hyphenate liquid → liquidate machine → machinate medic → medicate motive → motivate orient → orientate origin → originate oxygen → oxygenate	pollen → pollinate pulse → pulsate sulphur → sulphurate syncope → syncopate ulcer → ulcerate urine → urinate vaccine → vaccinate value → valuate

Verbs derived from nouns: <i>-ify</i>		
acid → acidify	gas → gasify	rate → ratify
beauty → beautify	glory → glorify	sign → signify
city → citify	note → notify	speech → speechify
code → codify	object → objectify	type → typify
fort → fortify	person → personify	verse → versify

## 5.2. Verb forms

English, unlike CATALAN, makes very little use of verbal inflections. With only one exception, all English verbs have at most five distinct forms (the exception is **be**, which has eight). These five forms are the infinitive, the **-s** form, the **-ing** form, the simple past and the participle.

A regular verb is one in which the simple past and participle forms are constructed by adding **-ed** to the bare infinitive, a construction often referred to as the **-ed** form. In the case of irregular verbs, the forms for the simple past and participle are given along with the infinitive in the dictionary.

In the first three divisions of this section, we will study the spelling of the **-s** form, the **-ing** form and the **-ed** form, and in the fourth, the verb **be**.

### 5.2.1. The **-s** form

There are five possible cases to consider when writing the **-s** form in English.

If the infinitive ends in a sibilant, ie with a hissing sound, the suffix is written **-es** and pronounced /ɪz/ (/əz/ in AmE), adding a syllable. The suffix is written **-s** if the infinitive already ends in **e**.

Sound	Verb	-s form	Pronunciation
/s/	kiss dance	kisses dances	/ˈkɪsɪz/ /dɑːnsɪz/
/z/	cause sneeze	causes sneezes	/kɔːzɪz/ /sniːzɪz/
/tʃ/	watch	watches	/wɒtʃɪz/
/dʒ/	change	changes	/tʃeɪndʒɪz/
/ʃ/	finish	finishes	/ˈfɪnɪʃɪz/
/ks/	mix	mixes	/mɪksɪz/



If the infinitive ends in a nonsibilant, unvoiced sound, the suffix is pronounced /s/ and written -s. Examples:

Sound	Verb	-s form	Pronunciation
/k/	check	checks	/tʃɛks/
/f/	loaf	loafs	/ləʊfs/
/p/	stop	stops	/stɒps/
/tʃ/	chat	chats	/tʃɛts/

If the infinitive ends in a nonsibilant, voiced sound or a vowel, the suffix is pronounced /z/ and written -s. Examples:

Sound	Verb	-s form	Pronunciation
/b/	rob	robs	/rɒbz/
/d/	fold	folds	/fəʊldz/
/g/	hug	hugs	/hʌgz/
/l/	call	calls	/kɔ:lz/
/m/	seem	seems	/si:mz/
/n/	plan	plans	/plɒnz/
/r/	stir	stirs	/stɜ:z/
/v/	live	lives	/lɪvz/
/əʊ/	snow	snows	/sneʊz/

If the infinitive ends in consonant + y, the y is replaced by i and the suffix is written -es. If the infinitive ends in vowel + y, no change is made.

Verbs ending in consonant + y	-s form	Pronunciation
try	tries	/traɪz/
reply	replies	/rɪˈplaɪz/

Verbs ending in vowel + y	-s form	Pronunciation
play	plays	/pleɪz/
obey	obeys	/ə(ʊ)'beɪz/

There are three verbs in English whose -s forms are spelled irregularly:

Verb	-s form	Pronunciation
have	has	/həz/
do	does	/dʌz/
go	goes	/gəʊz/

### 5.2.2. The *-ing* form

The English **-ing** form is always pronounced /ɪŋ/. There are, however, three orthographic changes to consider.

If the infinitive ends in consonant + vowel + consonant and the stress falls on the final syllable, the final consonant is doubled.

Verb	-ing form	Pronunciation
rob	robbing	/rɒbɪŋ/
drag	dragging	/dræɡɪŋ/
plan	planning	/plænɪŋ/
drop	dropping	/drɒpɪŋ/
chat	chatting	/tʃætɪŋ/
begin	beginning	/bɪ'ɡɪnɪŋ/
admit	admitting	/əd'mɪtɪŋ/

It is good to keep in mind that the final consonant is not doubled if it is preceded by two vowels – for example, **rain** → **raining** – nor is it doubled if the stress doesn't fall on the final syllable: **open** → **opening**. An exception to this last rule is that, in BrE, a final **l** is doubled even if the stress doesn't fall on the final syllable: eg **travel** → **travelling**.

If the infinitive ends in **-ie**, these two vowels are replaced by **y** before adding the suffix.

Verb	-ing form	Pronunciation
tie	tying	/tʌɪŋ/
lie	lying	/laɪŋ/
die	dying	/daɪŋ/

Remember too that all infinitives ending in **-y** form their **-ing** forms regularly: eg **study** → **studying**, **reply** → **replying**, **play** → **playing**, etc.

If the infinitive ends in a silent **e**, this letter is dropped before the **-ing** suffix.

Verb	-ing form	Pronunciation
close	closing	/kləʊzɪŋ/
come	coming	/kʌmɪŋ/

However, if the infinitive ends in **-ee** or **-oe**, the final **e** is not dropped.

Verb	-ing form	Pronunciation
agree	agreeing	/ə'gri:ɪŋ/
canoe	canoeing	/kə'nu:ɪŋ/

### 5.2.3. The **-ed** form

For regular English verbs, the simple past and participle form are constructed adding the suffix **-ed** to the bare infinitive. There are five possible cases to consider when writing the **-ed** form in English.

If the infinitive ends in the sounds **/t/** or **/d/**, the suffix is pronounced **/ɛd/** (in AmE, **/ɪd/**) and a syllable is added.

Sound	Verb	-ed form	Pronunciation
/t/	count	counted	/kaʊntɛd/
	vote	voted	/vəʊtɛd/
/d/	fold	folded	/fəʊldɛd/
	concede	conceded	/kən'si:dɛd/

If the infinitive ends in an unvoiced sound (except /t/), the suffix is pronounced /t/.

Sound	Verb	-ed form	Pronunciation
/k/	smoke	smoked	/sməʊkt/
/f/	loaf	loafed	/ləʊft/
/p/	jump	jumped	/dʒʌmpt/
/s/	kiss dance	kissed danced	/kɪst/ /dɑːnst/
/tʃ/	watch	watched	/wɒtʃt/
/ʃ/	finish	finished	/ˈfɪnɪʃt/
/ks/	mix	mixed	/mɪkst/

If the infinitive ends in a voiced sound (except /d/) or a vowel, the suffix is pronounced /d/.

Sound	Verb	-ed form	Pronunciation
/b/	rob	robbed	/rɒbd/
/g/	hug	hugged	/hʌgd/
/l/	call	called	/kɔːld/
/m/	seem	seemed	/siːmd/
/n/	plan	planned	/plænd/
/r/	stir	stirred	/stɜːd/
/v/	live	lived	/lɪvd/
/z/	use sneeze	used sneezed	/juːzd/ /sniːzd/
/dʒ/	judge	judged	/dʒʌdʒd/
/əʊ/	snow	snowed	/snəʊd/

If the infinitive ends in consonant + *y*, the *y* is replaced by *i* and the suffix is written **-ed**.  
If the infinitive ends in vowel + *y*, no change is made.

Verbs ending in consonant + <i>y</i>	-ed form	Pronunciation
try	tried	/tɹaɪd/
reply	replied	/rɪˈplaɪd/

Verbs ending in vowel + <i>y</i>	-ed form	Pronunciation
play	played	/pleɪd/
obey	obeyed	/ə(ʊ)ˈbeɪd/

If the infinitive ends in consonant + vowel + consonant and the stress falls on the final syllable, the final consonant is doubled.

Verb	-ed form	Pronunciation
rob	robbed	/rɒbd/
drag	dragged	/dragd/
plan	planned	/pland/
drop	dropped	/drɒpt/
chat	chatted	/tʃatɪd/
admit	admitted	/ədˈmɪtɪd/

It is good to keep in mind that the final consonant is not doubled if it is preceded by two vowels – for example, **rain** → **rained** – nor is it doubled if the stress doesn't fall on the final syllable – eg **open** → **opened**. An exception to this last rule is that, in BrE, a final *l* is doubled even if the stress doesn't fall on the final syllable – eg **travel** → **travelled**.

#### 5.2.4. The verb *be*

The verb **be** is the only verb in English that has more than five forms; it actually has eight:

Bare infinitive: **be**

Present forms: **am**, **is** and **are**

-ing form: **being**

Forms of simple past: **was** and **were**

Participle: **been**

Unlike other verbs, the verb **be** doesn't use the bare infinitive in the present indicative tense, rather it uses three special forms: **am**, **are** and **is**. It is good to keep in mind that, unlike CATALAN, English doesn't distinguish between *ser* and *estar*. For example, the expressions *sóc alt* and *estic cansat* are translated by **I am tall** and **I am tired**.

Present indicative tense of <i>be</i>		
Person	Singular	Plural
1 <sup>st</sup>	I am	we are
2 <sup>nd</sup>	you are	you are
3 <sup>rd</sup>	he/she/it is	they are

The verb **be** is also unique in that it has two forms in the simple past: **was** and **were**. Those persons that use **are** in the present – **we**, **you** and **they** – use **were** in the past; the others – **I**, **he**, **she** and **it** – use **was**. It is useful to remember that the simple past of the English verb **be** translates four different expressions in CATALAN: for example, *vaig ser*, *vaig estar*, *era* and *estava* are all translated: **I was**.

Past simple tense of <i>be</i>		
Person	Singular	Plural
1 <sup>st</sup>	I was	we were
2 <sup>nd</sup>	you were	you were
3 <sup>rd</sup>	he/she/it was	they were

### 5.3. Verb contractions

The following English auxiliary verbs can be contracted with personal pronouns:

**am, are, is**

**have, has, had**

**will, would**

Singular	Plural
I'm, I've, I'd, I'll	we're, we've, we'd, we'll
you're, you've, you'd, you'll	you're, you've, you'd, you'll
he's, he'd, he'll	they're, they've, they'd, they'll
she's, she'd, she'll	
it's, it'd, it'll	

(For more details, see Sy 2.4.)

A much larger number of auxiliary verbs can be contracted with the adverb **not**.

Contraction of auxiliary verbs with <i>not</i>		
are not → aren't	had not → hadn't	cannot → can't
is not → isn't	do not → don't	could not → couldn't
was not → wasn't	does not → doesn't	must not → mustn't
were not → weren't	did not → didn't	need not → needn't
have not → haven't	will not → won't	should not → shouldn't
has not → hasn't	would not → wouldn't	

Note that **am** is the exception; it cannot be contracted with **not**.

## 6. Adverbs

The only morphological changes English adverbs undergo is in the case of adverbs of manner derived from adjectives. In the same way that CATALAN produces these adverbs adding the suffix *-ment* to the feminine form of adjectives, English adds the suffix *-ly*. Examples:

Adverbs formed with <i>-ly</i>		
awful → awfully	calm → calmly	slow → slowly
bad → badly	quick → quickly	

The morphological rules are as follows:

The final silent *e* is not dropped, except in the case of adjectives ending in consonant + *le*, in which case the *-le* is replaced by *-ly*. Examples:

Adverbs formed with <i>-ly</i> (adjectives ending in <i>-e</i> )		
brave → bravely	loose → loosely	able → ably
close → closely	polite → politely	simple → simply
false → falsely	safe → safely	

Exceptions:

**due → duly**  
**true → truly**  
**whole → wholly**

The suffix **-ally** is added to adjectives ending in **-ic**. Examples:

Adverbs formed with <i>-ally</i>		
basic → basically	economic → economically	fanatic → fanatically

Exception:

**public → publicly**

If the adjective ends in consonant + **y**, the **y** is usually replaced by **i** before adding the **-ly** suffix. Examples:

Adverbs formed with <i>-ily</i>		
angry → angrily	easy → easily	happy → happily

Exceptions:

**shy → shyly**

**spry → spryly**

**wry → wryly**

Finally, English adverbs of manner can also be derived from adjectives ending in **-ed** and **-ing**. Examples:

Adverbs formed with <i>-ly</i> (adjectives ending in <i>-ed</i> )		
admitted → admittedly alleged → allegedly belated → belatedly	half-hearted → half-heartedly pointed → pointedly repeated → repeatedly	wholehearted → wholeheartedly

Adverbs formed with <i>-ly</i> (adjectives ending in <i>-ing</i> )		
alarming → alarmingly amazing → amazingly	cunning → cunningly grudging → grudgingly	joking → jokingly knowing → knowingly

## 7. Demonyms (gentilics)

We will divide the demonym section into countries and cities.

### 7.1. Country demonyms

Country demonyms, or nationality names, are usually determined by the ending of the name of the nation. However, there are some important exceptions, which we will mention as we go on.



Countries whose names end in **a** usually form the demonym by adding **-n** to the country name. Examples:

Demonyms formed with <i>-n</i> (countries ending in <i>-a</i> )		
Andorra → Andorran	Cuba → Cuban	Libya → Libyan
Australia → Australian	Galicia → Galician	Nicaragua → Nicaraguan
Bolivia → Bolivian	India → Indian	Nigeria → Nigerian
Colombia → Colombian	Korea → Korean	Russia → Russian

Exceptions:

**Argentina → Argentine**  
**Canada → Canadian**  
**Catalonia → Catalan** (not ~~Catalonian~~)  
**China → Chinese**  
**Guyana → Guyanese**  
**Malta → Maltese**  
**Saudi Arabia → Saudi**  
**Slovakia → Slovak**  
**Slovenia → Slovene**  
**Somalia → Somali**

Countries whose names end in a vowel other than **a** sometimes add **-an** to the country name, but there are many exceptions. Examples:

Demonyms formed with <i>-an</i> (countries ending in vowel other than <i>a</i> )		
Chile → Chilean	Burundi → Burundian	Haiti → Haitian
Singapore → Singaporean	Fiji → Fijian	Morocco → Moroccan

Exceptions:

**Congo → Congolese**  
**France → French**  
**Greece → Greek**  
**Ukraine → Ukrainian**  
**Peru → Peruvian**

Countries whose names end in **y** generally have demonyms ending in **-an**, but the morphological changes vary somewhat. Examples:

Demonyms formed with <b>-an</b> (countries ending in <b>-y</b> )		
Germany → German	Italy → Italian	Paraguay → Paraguayan
Hungary → Hungarian	Norway → Norwegian	Uruguay → Uruguayan

Exception:

**Turkey → Turk**

Countries whose names end in consonants often use the suffixes **-(i)an** or **-ese**. Examples:

Demonyms formed with <b>-an</b> (countries ending in consonant)		
Afghanistan → Afghan	Brazil → Brazilian	Egypt → Egyptian
Belgium → Belgian	Ecuador → Ecuadorean	Iran → Iranian

Demonyms formed with <b>-ese</b> (countries ending in consonant)		
Bhutan → Bhutanese	Lebanon → Lebanese	Sudan → Sudanese
Gabon → Gabonese	Nepal → Nepalese	Taiwan → Taiwanese
Japan → Japanese	Portugal → Portuguese	Vietnam → Vietnamese

Note:

**Niger → Nigerien** should not be confused with **Nigeria → Nigerian**

Here are some countries whose demonyms end in **-i**:

Demonyms formed with <b>-i</b>		
Azerbaijan → Azerbaijani	Iraq → Iraqi	Kuwait → Kuwaiti
Bangladesh → Bangladeshi	Israel → Israeli	Pakistan → Pakistani

Finally, here are some demonyms that resist categorization:

**Basque Country → Basque**

**Cyprus → Cypriot**

**Czech Republic → Czech**

**Denmark → Dane**

**England → English**

**Finland → Finn or Finnish**

**Iceland → Icelandic**

**Ireland → Irish**

**Luxembourg → Luxembourger**

Netherlands → Dutch  
Philippines → Filipino  
Poland → Pole  
Scotland → Scot  
Spain → Spaniard  
Sweden → Swede  
Switzerland → Swiss  
United Kingdom → Briton  
United States → American\*  
Wales → Welsh  
Yemen → Yemeni

\*Remember that in English, **American** refers to citizens of the United States. **North Americans** are the citizens of Canada, the United States and Mexico: for example, the **North American Free Trade Agreement** is an agreement between these three countries. People living between Mexico and Venezuela are generally referred to as **Central Americans** (though Mexico is sometimes referred to as being part of Central America) and those living in Venezuela and points south, **South Americans**. Remember too that, in English geography, North America and South America are separate continents.

There is a complete list of demonyms in alphabetical order at [geography.about.com/library/weekly/aa030900a.htm](http://geography.about.com/library/weekly/aa030900a.htm)

## 7.2. City demonyms

City demonyms are particularly difficult to predict and, in fact, are sometimes non-existent. For example, in English there are no city demonyms for Madrid, Beijing and many other cities; we simply say **someone from Madrid**, **someone from Beijing**, etc.

In this section we will limit ourselves to providing some of the most important city demonyms, organized by suffix.

**-(a)n** – The **-(a)n** suffix is especially productive for cities ending in vowels. Examples:  
**Barcelonan, Roman, Atlantan, Chicagoan, Singaporean.**

**-er** – The **-er** suffix is also very productive for all kinds of cities. Examples:  
**Amsterdamer, Berliner, Dubliner, Frankfurter, Hamburger,**  
**Hong Konger, Londoner, New Yorker.**

Other less common suffixes for important city demonyms:

**-ese**  
**Viennese.**

**-ian**  
**Athenian, Bostonian, Houstonian, Parisian, Torontonion.**

**-ite**  
**Muscovite, Seattleite.**

Also: **Los Angeleno, Sydneysider.**

# Practical Guide to English Usage

## Syntax

This section explores the rules governing the proper construction of sentences in English, breaking them down into their integral parts, such as nouns and verbs.

### 1. Nouns

Noun syntax in English involves a number of issues, which we will look at in detail in the following section. The points dealt with include the possessive, partitives and noun + noun combinations.

#### 1.1. The Saxon genitive

We have already studied the morphology of the Saxon genitive in section Mo 1.5. In this section we will look at its syntax and use.

##### Syntax of the Saxon genitive

The Saxon genitive is normally used either as an attributive adjective (an adjective that precedes the noun it modifies), a predicate adjective (one that comes after the verb **be**) and an “independent possessive”, a possessive that is used to avoid the repetition of another noun. The following examples should make this clear.

Use as an attributive adjective

**Eric’s car is blue.**

**The teacher’s role is to guide the student.**

**This term’s main objective is to introduce GNU/Linux.**

Use as a predicate adjective

**The blue car is Eric’s.**

**That is the teacher’s role.**

**The bag under the table is the doctor’s.**

Note that English generally does not use a Saxon genitive as a predicate adjective for non-personal nouns:

**The decision was made by the government** (better than **The decision was the government’s**).

Use as an independent possessive (the use of the independent possessive is underlined)

**Monica’s car is red and Eric’s is blue.**

A special use of the Saxon genitive as an independent possessive is when it refers either to someone’s house, or to a commercial or professional establishment. Examples:

**We’re going to Rick’s.**

**Elena invited Louis to dinner at her mother’s.**

**Meritxell is at the dentist’s.**

Finally, if two people have one thing in common, the 's is added only to the second, whereas if each has their own thing, the 's is added to both nouns. Examples:

**We're going to Edward and Irene's.** (They live together.)

**Tom's and Jerry's wives have enrolled on a course.** (Each man has a different wife.)

### The double genitive

A special case is the so-called double genitive, which is formed either by an indefinite or demonstrative determiner (**a, an, some, this, that, these** or **those**) plus the locution noun + **of** + Saxon genitive. Its basic meaning is 'one of several' or 'some of many', so examples such as **a friend of Tom's** and **some students of Alicia's** are equivalent to **one of Tom's friends** and **some of Alicia's students**, respectively. However, in the case of the demonstratives, no alternative is possible; care must be taken not to use constructions such as **this** + Saxon genitive + noun: eg we don't say ~~this Monica's letter~~, but rather **this letter of Monica's**.

The double genitive can also be used to describe artistic and literary works: for example, **a painting of Van Gogh's** or **some novels of Josep Pla's**.

More examples:

**She was a college classmate of Hillary Clinton's.**

**We heard about it from a neighbour of Bill's.**

**That car of my brother's needs new tyres.**

**This is the only painting of Joan's we have.** (This is the only picture painted by Joan that we have.) Note that if Joan were the subject of the painting, we would say the following: **This is the only painting of Joan we have.**

Finally, the double genitive can be used to express annoyance or praise.

**I just saw that stupid friend of Henry's!**

**Those wonderful children of your sister's have given me some flowers!**

### Combinations of the Saxon genitive

Combinations of the Saxon genitive can seem particularly confusing because the English construction has precisely the opposite order of the CATALAN. It is useful to remember that the Saxon genitive functions as an adjective and thus precedes the noun it modifies. Perhaps the following comparisons will make this relation clearer.

*La Pilar* – **Pilar**

*De la Pilar* – **Pilar's**

*El germà de la Pilar* – **Pilar's brother**

*Del germà de la Pilar* – **Pilar's brother's**

*La xicota del germà de la Pilar* – **Pilar's brother's girlfriend**

*De la xicota del germà de la Pilar* – **Pilar's brother's girlfriend's**

Examples:

**Pilar's brother's girlfriend knows our neighbours.**

**My mother's neighbour's son is from Blanes.**

**Whose car is that? It's my mother's neighbour's son's.**

**Whose handbag is under the table? It's Pilar's brother's girlfriend's.**

## Use of the Saxon genitive

The two most important uses of the Saxon genitive are to indicate possession – eg **John's car** – and to indicate personal relationships, eg **John's mother**. For this reason, the use of the Saxon genitive is usually reserved for people or animate beings. However, there are exceptions, and so the simplest way to explain the proper use of the Saxon genitive is to mention three possibilities:

- cases in which the use of the Saxon genitive is generally required;
- cases in which the use of the Saxon genitive is optional;
- cases in which the use of the Saxon genitive is incorrect.

Before entering into details, a general rule that almost never fails is to use the Saxon genitive with people and time expressions (**yesterday, today, tomorrow, last Tuesday**, etc.; see below) and, in other cases, either the **of** form or the noun + noun form (see section Sy 1.5.). In those cases where the Saxon genitive is non-personal and optional, use the **of** form.

### Cases in which the use of the Saxon genitive is generally required

The use of the Saxon genitive is generally obligatory in the following cases:

When referring to possession or relationships between people

**Roger's book**, not ~~the book of Roger~~  
**the nurse's watch**, not ~~the watch of the nurse~~  
**Mary's friends**, not ~~the friends of Mary~~  
**her husband's aunt**, not ~~the aunt of her husband~~

When referring to someone's house, or a commercial or professional establishment

**We're going to John's.**  
**They've gone to the hairdresser's.**

In time expressions

**yesterday's weather, today's newspaper, tomorrow's class, a month's wages, last week's lecture**, etc. (not ~~the weather of yesterday, the newspaper of today~~, etc.).

When referring to products from live animals

**goat's milk, sheep's wool, a hen's egg**

### Cases in which the use of Saxon genitive is optional

There are many cases in which either the Saxon genitive or the **of** form can be used with no difference in meaning.

Genitive constructions that are not possessive

**Shakespeare's sonnets** or **the sonnets of Shakespeare**  
**my parents' permission** or **the permission of my parents**  
**Abraham Lincoln's assassin** or **the assassin of Abraham Lincoln**

Animals

**the lion's roar** or **the roar of the lion**  
**a deer's grace** or **the grace of a deer**

If an animal has a name (eg **Bobi** or **Tula**), the Saxon genitive is always used (eg **Bobi's dish**, **Tula's collar**, etc.).

Plants

**the tree's leaves** or **the leaves of the tree**

Natural phenomena

**the light of the stars** or **the stars' light**

Political, geographical or institutional entities

**the city's air pollution** or **the air pollution of the city**

**the river's current** or **the current of the river**

**their school's reputation** or **the reputation of their school**

Collective nouns

**the public's confidence** or **the confidence of the public**

**the government's decision** or **the decision of the government**

Things of special interest to human activity

**the brain's weight** or **the weight of the brain**

**the game's history** or **the history of the game**

Cases in which the use of the Saxon genitive would be incorrect

With the exception of the cases mentioned above, the general rule in English is to use the Saxon genitive for people and chronological time. Here are some examples in which the use of the Saxon genitive would be incorrect.

a piece of cake, not ~~a cake's piece~~

the side of the building, not ~~the building's side~~

the table leg or the leg of the table, not ~~the table's leg~~

the consequences of their inactivity, not ~~their inactivity's consequences~~

the value of his ideas, not ~~his ideas' value~~

some aspects of the problem, not ~~some of the problem's aspects~~

## 1.2. Animal names

As is the case in CATALAN, there are many instances in English in which the name of a male animal is different from that of the female. This is particularly the case for common mammals. The following is a list of some of the most important:

boar/sow

buck or stag/doe or hind

bull/cow

dog/bitch

lion/lioness

ram/ewe

cock [BrE], rooster [AmE]/hen

stallion/mare

tiger/tigress



drake/duck  
fox/vixen  
gander/goose  
billygoat/nanny goat

English also has a large number of special words that describe groups of animals. The following are some of the most important.

a bed of clams, of oysters  
a brood of hens  
a clutch of chicks  
a colony of ants, of beavers, of gulls, of penguins  
a covey of grouse, of partridges, of pheasants, of ptarmigans, of quail  
a herd/drove of cattle  
a flock of sheep, of birds  
a gam of whales  
a murder of crows  
a pack of wolves, of hounds  
a pod of seals, of whales  
a pride of lions  
a school of fish  
a skulk of foxes  
a swarm of bees  
an unkindness of ravens

### 1.3. Partitives

Partitive constructions are those that describe part of a whole. These distinctions can be based on quality (a **kind of** cheese or a **type of** behaviour) or quantity (a **slice of** bread or **three pieces of** cake).

#### 1.3.1. Quality partitives

There are three main expressions that are used as partitive constructions of quality: **type of**, **kind of** and **sort of**. Broadly speaking, we can say that **type of** is used in more formal contexts and **kind of** is used more colloquially. As for **sort of**, it is used especially when the reference is vague or imprecise. Examples:

This **type of** architecture is known as Romanic.  
There is a new **type of** carburettor that is more fuel-efficient.  
What **kind of** internet connection do I need?  
We've had all **kinds of** problems.  
I'd never do that **sort of** thing.

It is worth noting that, in certain circumstances, there is a lack of correspondence between singular and plural forms in English and CATALAN. Where CATALAN uses the singular expressions *tota mena* and *tot tipus*, English uses the plural expressions **all kinds of** and **all types of**. Examples:

**We work in alliance with all kinds of public and private organizations.**

*Treballem en aliança amb tota mena d'organitzacions públiques i privades.*

**They've tried all types of remedies, but he's still sick.**

*Han provat tot tipus de cures, però encara està malalt.*

As for the demonstrative pronouns, English grammar manuals recommend that there be agreement between the various elements.

Singular: [this/that] + [kind/type/sort] of + singular noun  
**this kind of thing, that type of education, this sort of problem**

Plural: [these/those] + [kinds/types/sorts] of + plural noun  
**these kinds of jobs, those types of architecture, these sorts of criminals**

Finally, the interrogative adjectives **which** and **what** are used with both singular and plural partitives. Examples:

**Which/what kind of studies are being done on this subject?**

**Which/what kinds of studies are being done on this subject?**

### 1.3.2. Quantity partitives

The quantity partitive constructions are most often used to talk about a particular part of another noun: for example, **a sheet of paper** and **a slice of bread**. Obviously it is important not to confuse the terminology, because the expressions ~~a slice of paper~~ and ~~a sheet of bread~~ are wrong.

In English there are two types of quantity partitive constructions: general and specific. The first are used in a large number of cases and the second only in specific cases. We will examine first the general and then the specific.

#### General partitive constructions

The two most common partitive constructions in English are **a piece of** and **a bit/lot of**. The former is used more often; it can be used with virtually all concrete and abstract nouns (eg **a piece of pie, a piece of wood, a piece of news, a piece of advice**, etc.). It is worth noting that expressions using **piece of** are translated in various ways in CATALAN, depending on the noun. Generally speaking, CATALAN will use various partitives when referring to concrete nouns and the indefinite article when referring to abstract nouns.

Concrete nouns

**a piece of paper/cake/clothing/furniture/coal/land/luggage**

Abstract nouns

**a piece of advice/research/news/work**

The expression **a bit of** is used to mean a small quantity of and, as such, generally corresponds to the CATALAN *una mica de*. It is synonymous with the English quantitative adjective **a little** (eg **a bit of wine** = **a little wine**). It is also sometimes translated *petit -a*. Examples:

**a bit of wine/fun/advice/trouble**

*una mica de vi, una mica de diversió, un petit consell, un petit problema*

### Specific partitive constructions

Here is a list of some of the most important English partitive constructions; many of them might equally be considered to be idioms.

a bar (of chocolate, of soap, of gold, of iron)  
a blade of grass  
a block (of ice, of shares)  
a crowd of people  
a cut (of meat, of lamb, of beef, etc.)  
a drop (of water, of oil, of whisky)  
a grain (of corn, of rice, of sand, of salt)  
a loaf of bread  
a lump (of coal, of lead, of sugar)  
a pack (of cards, of cigarettes)  
a series (of incidents, of concerts, of lectures)  
a sheet (of paper, of metal, of ice)  
a slice (of bacon, of cake, of meat, of bread)  
a speck (of dust, of dirt)  
a stick (of dynamite, of celery)  
a strip (of paper, of cloth, of land)  
a suit (of clothes, of armour)

### 1.4. Collective nouns

Collective nouns are those that refer to groups of people (or animals; see section Sy 1.2.), such as **the army** and **our team**. Whereas in AmE, as in CATALAN, these nouns take a singular verb, in BrE they can be used with either singular or plural verbs. Broadly speaking, BrE uses the singular forms when the group is considered as an impersonal entity and uses the plural forms when the group is considered a collection of individuals. Examples:

**My family are** (AmE **is**) **moving to Bristol.**  
**The government have** (AmE **has**) **passed several new laws.**  
**The orchestra are** (AmE **is**) **tuning up.**

Note that, as is the case in CATALAN, a singular collective noun can be the antecedent of plural pronoun.

**The union** (the entity) **is upset about the new work rules; they** (the members) **have threatened to go on strike.**

### 1.5. Noun + noun

Nouns in English are often used to premodify other nouns: for example, **breadcrumb** (*engruna de pa*), **fire engine** (*cotxe de bombers*) and **honey-bee** (*abella [que produeix la mel]*). CATALAN occasionally uses similar constructions – eg *hora punta* and *escola pilot* –, but they are used much more extensively in English. We have already discussed the morphology of the combination noun + noun in section Mo 1.2., and though a complete analysis of all the uses of these forms lies beyond the scope of the present study (see [visca.com/apac/articles/noun-noun.html](http://visca.com/apac/articles/noun-noun.html)), in this section we will take brief look at some of the most important uses of these forms.

### Classification of noun + noun combinations

The following is a list of nine basic kinds of noun + noun combinations.

Material composition. The second noun is composed of the first (**stone bridge**). More examples:

chocolate bar  
raindrop  
snowflake  
straw hat  
chicken soup  
lamb/pork chop

Use. The second noun is used for the first (**address book**). More examples:

ashtray  
cat food  
toilet paper

Components. The second noun is a component of the first (**doorknob**). More examples:

window pane  
arrowhead  
phone number  
car keys

Location. The first noun localizes the second (**kitchen counter**). More examples:

basement door  
road sign  
city dweller  
earthworm

Containers. The second noun is used to contain the first (**coffee cup**). More examples:

matchbox  
milk bottle  
water bucket

In cases such as these, it is important to distinguish between **a coffee cup**, that is, a cup that we use to hold coffee, and **a cup of coffee**, a cup that is full of coffee. So, if we want to say *Va beure una ampolla de cervesa*, we must say **He drank a bottle of beer**, not ~~He drank a beer bottle~~, which would mean he had swallowed the bottle as well!

Activities. The second, personal, noun performs the activity described by the first (**football player**). More examples:

blood donor  
housekeeper  
sales manager

Quantities, sizes, distances and durations. The first noun describes the quantity, size, distance or duration of the second (**five-pound note**). More examples:

two-gallon jug  
forty-foot drop  
three-mile walk  
two-hour talk

Production. The first noun is produced or given by the second (**oil well**). More examples:

dairy farm  
bicycle factory  
gold mine  
power plant

The second noun is produced or given by the first (**cane sugar**). More examples:

bloodstain  
food poisoning  
sawdust

Verb derivation. The first noun performs the second (**heartbeat**). More examples:

horserace  
headache  
earthquake

The second noun performs the first (**rattlesnake**). More examples:

washing machine  
dancing girl  
hangman  
watchdog

Someone causes the action of the second noun to affect the first (**can opener**). More examples:

haircut  
handshake  
tax cut

The second noun is subjected to the action of the first (**sleeping bag**). More examples:

living room  
chewing gum  
frying pan  
hiding place

## 2. Adjectives

It is important to keep in mind that adjectives in English are almost always invariable, the exceptions being the possessive and demonstrative adjectives (see section Sy 2.2.). Note that in the following four examples the adjective **tall** remains the same in singular and plural, masculine and feminine.

**a tall boy** (*un noi alt*)  
**two tall boys** (*dos nois alts*)  
**a tall girl** (*una noia alta*)  
**two tall girls** (*dues noies altes*)

There is a common tendency to pluralize Latin-derived adjectives when they appear in predicative position (ie after the verb **be**); this must be avoided. Examples:

**Steel and iron are important** (*L'acer i el ferro són importants*) (not **Steel and iron are ~~important~~s**).  
**The concerts were popular** (*Els concerts eren populars*) (not **The concerts were ~~popular~~s**).

### 2.1. Adjective order

When considering adjective order, it should be remembered that English has two types of adjectives: attributive and predicative. The first are generally noun complements and are typically found before the nouns they modify – eg **a white horse** (*un cavall blanc*) –, whereas predicate adjectives can play two roles: as a predicative of the subject (in CATALAN, a *predicat nominal*), linked to it by a copula – eg **the horse is white** (*el cavall és blanc*) – or as a predicative of the object (in CATALAN, *complement predicatiu*), following the modified noun – eg **you make me happy** (*em fas feliç*).

#### 2.1.1. Attributive adjectives

As is the case in CATALAN, English attributive adjectives determine, delimit or classify the nouns they modify and form part of the noun phrase. On the other hand, predicative adjectives, which we will study in section Sy 2.1.2., qualify the nouns they modify and, in both English and CATALAN, appear after a copulative verb, such as **be**, **seem** or **feel**. Compare:

Attributive use:

**I like dry wine** (*M'agrada el vi sec*).  
The adjective **dry** classifies the noun **wine**.

Predicative use:

**The wine is dry** (*El vi és sec*).  
The adjective **dry** describes a quality of the noun **wine**.

#### Attributive adjectives that precede the noun

In English, attributive adjectives generally precede the nouns they modify (we will look at the exceptions later in this section). The following are some typical examples; note that determiners always precede attributive adjectives.

a small problem  
 some dirty clothes  
 an angry woman  
 a dull movie  
 the bad examples  
 a famous event  
 the daily news  
 the wrong way  
 a complete failure  
 some hungry people

It should be pointed out that two common CATALAN constructions are often erroneously translated literally into English; they are the combinations definite article + noun + més + adjective and determiner + noun + adv. + adj. Examples:

*la vista més atractiva* = **the most attractive view** (not ~~the view most attractive~~)  
*les noies més populars* = **the most popular girls** (not ~~the girls most popular~~)  
*un altre fet molt important* = **another very important fact** (not ~~another fact very important~~)  
*moltes noies una mica begudes* = **many slightly drunken girls** (not ~~many girls slightly drunken~~)

### Ordering groups of attributive adjectives

The ordering in English of attributive adjectives is somewhat complex. Broadly speaking, we can say that adjectives that express essential qualities of the noun they are modifying are placed as close as possible to these nouns, whereas general adjectives that can be used with a large number of nouns are placed further away, that is, further to the left. What follows is a general rule for the placement of adjectives before nouns in English; note, however, that there can be considerable variation in the order of categories IV through VII.

I) articles, possessive adjectives, demonstrative adjectives and the Saxon genitive

II) the adjectives **another**, **other** and **same**

III) numbers

\*\*\*

IV) general quality adjectives (eg **nice**, **stupid**, **complicated**, etc.)

V) size and weight (eg **big**, **small**, **heavy**, etc.)

VI) dimension and shape (eg **tall**, **round**, etc.)

VII) age (eg **young**, **old**, etc.)

\*\*\*

VIII) colour

IX) demonyms (*gentilicis*) (eg **French**, **Catalan**, etc.)

X) material (eg **leather**, **cotton**, etc.)

XI) purpose (eg **table** wine, **car** tools, etc.)

Examples:

<b>a</b>	<b>fat</b>	<b>old</b>	<b>Russian</b>	<b>horse</b>
article	shape	age	demonym	noun

<b>the</b>	<b>other</b>	<b>six</b>	<b>brown</b>	<b>beer</b>	<b>bottles</b>
article	(II)	number	colour	purpose	noun

<b>an</b>	<b>impressive</b>	<b>tall</b>	<b>grey</b>	<b>metal</b>	<b>radio</b>	<b>tower</b>
article	quality	dimension	colour	material	purpose	noun

<b>numerous</b>	<b>small</b>	<b>carved</b>	<b>Chinese</b>	<b>jade</b>	<b>idols</b>
number	size	quality	demonym	material	noun

It should be added, however, that we can say both **a big old fat man** and **a big fat old man**. In the first case we consider the principal quality of the man to be fatness, whereas in the second we consider it to be age.

### The use of commas and the conjunction *and*

Commas are generally used to separate strings of adjectives that come before nouns, but can often be omitted if the adjectives are common and short. They are never placed between the final adjective and the noun. Examples:

**an exciting, innovative, revolutionary, new proposal**  
**a tall dark handsome cowboy**

The conjunction **and** is almost never used between adjectives that precede a noun. The only exceptions are when the adjectives refer to two or more parts of a single thing – for example, **a black and yellow taxi** – or, in formal styles, when the two adjectives are similar (eg **a cruel and evil tyrant**, **a refined and elegant air**).

### Attributive adjectives that follow the noun

There are certain special cases in which English postposes adjectives; the following are the most important.

English always postposes adjectives modifying the indefinite pronouns ending **-body**, **-one** and **-thing** and the indefinite adverbs ending in either **-where** or **-place**. Examples:

**Somebody interesting is waiting for you in the hall.**  
**No one interested in ancient Egypt should miss this exhibition.**



**I'd never do anything really dangerous.  
Shall we go somewhere a little more quiet?**

Certain adjectives beginning with the prefix **a-**, which are normally found in the predicative position (see section Sy 2.1.2.), are postposed when used attributively. Examples:

**ten ships afloat in the bay  
a boy asleep  
a man alone**

The adjectives **present**, **concerned**, **responsible** and **involved** are used both before and after nouns, with a change in meaning. Examples:

**All those present agreed.**  
*Tots els presents estaven d'acord.*  
**The present situation is quite difficult.**  
*La situació actual és força difícil.*  
**The man concerned refuses to press charges.**  
*L'home en qüestió es nega a fer acusacions.*  
**The concerned parents called for stricter discipline.**  
*Els pares preocupats van demanar una disciplina més severa.*  
**The man responsible has been arrested.**  
*Han arrestat l'home responsable.*  
**It's hard to find a responsible young man these days.**  
*Avui dia és difícil de trobar un jove fiable.*  
**The politicians involved in the fraud have fled the country.**  
*Els polítics implicats en el frau han fugit del país.*  
**I'm reading one of those really involved murder mysteries.**  
*Llegeixo una d'aquestes novel·les de sèrie negra molt enrevessades.*

### 2.1.2. Predicative adjectives

Predicative adjectives are those that appear after a copulative verb, such as **be**, **seem** or **feel**. Broadly speaking, their use corresponds with that of CATALAN (see Mo 2.); however, it is important to keep in mind that certain adjectives in English are restricted to predicative use: for example, we can say **the man is ill**, but we don't generally refer to ~~an ill man~~, rather a **sick man**.

We can divide adjectives that are only used predicatively into four groups.

The first group is composed of adjectives that are related to health or moods, such as **well**, **ill**, **unwell**, **faint**, **dizzy**, **content**, **glad**, and **sorry**. Note that some of these adjectives can be used attributively, but that in these cases they are not related to health or moods. Examples:

**She isn't well; she's been ill/unwell for months.**  
**I'm feeling a little dizzy.**  
**The graduate students were content with their lot.**  
**He seemed glad about the news.**  
**I'd never felt so sorry in my life!**

Adjectives that begin with the prefix **a-**, such as **afraid**, **alike**, **alive**, **alone**, **asleep** and **awake**, or **averse (to)** and **aware (of)**. Examples:

He's hiding because he is afraid.  
 They look alike to me.  
 Let's go somewhere where we can be alone.  
 Their party is averse to all change.  
 I doubt whether they are aware of the difficulties.

Certain participial adjectives in English are used to describe temporal conditions, caused by the action of the verb in question, and these are also restricted to predicative position. For example, we can say **My sister was prepared** (*La meva germana estava preparada*) but not ~~**my prepared sister**~~ (*la meva germana preparada*). Here is a list of other participial adjectives of this class.

ashamed  
 camped  
 convinced  
 found  
 gone  
 stopped  
 touched

Here is a list of some miscellaneous English adjectives whose meanings change according to whether they are used attributively or predicatively.

Examples of predicative use (for examples of **faint** and **dizzy**, see above):

Adjective	Predicative sense	Attributive sense
due	<i>ser previst</i>	<i>degut, oportú</i>
likely	<i>probable</i>	<i>prometedor</i>
ready	<i>preparat, a punt</i>	<i>prompte</i>
welcome	(people) <i>benvingut</i>	(events) <i>agradable</i>
faint	<i>marejat i a punt de desmaiar-se</i>	<i>dèbil</i>
dizzy	<i>marejat quan roda el cap</i>	<i>eixelebrat</i>

The train is due soon.  
 Publishers are more likely to allow the reproduction of texts.  
 They're ready for anything!  
 You're welcome to spend the night if you like.

## 2.2. Possessive adjectives (and pronouns)

In modern English grammar, possessive adjectives now fall under the grammatical category of determiners. However, we refer to them here as adjectives because their relation to the corresponding CATALAN forms is clearer.

Unlike CATALAN, English distinguishes between possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns. We'll study this distinction in the following section; for now, here is a table showing the correspondence between the English possessive adjectives and pronouns and their CATALAN counterparts.

Possessive adjectives and pronouns		
English		Catalan
Adjective	Pronoun	
my	mine	(el) meu, (la) meva, (els) meus, (les) meves
your	yours	(el) teu, (la) teva, (els) teus, (les) teves
our	ours	(el) nostre, (la) nostra, (els, les) nostres
your	yours	(el) vostre, (la) vostra, (els, les) vostres
his (d'ell)	his (d'ell)	(el) seu, (la) seva, (els) seus, (les) seves
her (d'ella)	hers (d'ella)	
its (d'una cosa)		
their (d'ells)	theirs (d'ells)	

Determiners are never used before English possessive adjectives or pronouns. Examples:

**My dog has fleas** (not ~~The my dog...~~).

*El meu gos té puces.*

**This plane must be ours** (not ... ~~must be the ours~~).

*Aquest avió deu ser el nostre.*

**I like your music more than theirs** (not ... ~~than the theirs~~).

*M'agrada més la vostra música que la seva.*

In English, the third-person possessive adjectives and pronouns are determined by the possessor, whereas in CATALAN they are determined by that which is possessed (masculine or feminine, singular or plural). This difference can be extremely counter-intuitive, as the following table should make clear.

If we say in Catalan:	... and we are referring to:	... in English we say:
<i>el seu pare</i>	<i>en Jordi</i>	<b>his father</b>
<i>la seva mare</i>		<b>his mother</b>
<i>els seus germans</i>		<b>his brothers</b>
<i>les seves germanes</i>		<b>his sisters</b>
	<i>la Maria</i>	<b>her father</b>
		<b>her mother</b>
		<b>her brothers</b>
		<b>her sisters</b>
	<i>en Jordi i la Maria</i>	<b>their father</b>
		<b>their mother</b>
		<b>their brothers</b>
		<b>their sisters</b>

Examples:

**Their mother is eighty-eight.**

*La seva mare [d'ells] té vuitanta-vuit anys.*

**His sisters visit him often.**

*Les seves germanes [d'ell] el visiten sovint.*

**These books are hers.**

*Aquests llibres són seus [d'ella].*

**My keys are here, his are over there.**

*Les meves claus són aquí i les seves [d'ell], allà.*

Remember that English has no pronoun corresponding to either *vostè* or *vós*; in the same way that both are translated in English by **you**, their corresponding possessives are translated by **your** and **yours**. Thus the sentence **We've received your letter** can be translated *Hem rebut la teva carta*, *Hem rebut la vostra carta* (*de vosaltres* o *de vós*) or *Hem rebut la seva carta* (*de vostè* o *de vostès*).

English must use a possessive adjective when translating CATALAN articles that have a possessive sense. Examples:

*Els nens fan els deures* – **The children are doing their** [not ~~the~~] **homework.**

*Perds el temps* – **You're wasting your** [not ~~the~~] **time.**

*Aquestes festes han perdut la gràcia* – **These festivals have lost their** [not ~~the~~] **charm.**

### The use of English possessive adjectives and pronouns

In English, possessive adjectives are used only attributively (before the nouns they modify: eg **my dog**) and possessive pronouns are used both as predicative adjectives (after the verb **be**: eg **The dog is mine**) and independent possessives (eg **Your dog is old and mine is young**).

Attributive Adjective	Predicative Adjective	Independent Possessive
<b>my dog</b> <i>el meu gos</i>	<b>the dog is mine</b> <i>el gos és meu</i>	<b>mine is old</b> <i>el meu és vell</i>
<b>your dog</b> <i>el teu/vostre gos</i>	<b>the dog is yours</b> <i>el gos és teu/vostre</i>	<b>yours is old</b> <i>el teu/vostre és vell</i>
<b>his dog, her dog, their dog</b> <i>el seu gos</i>	<b>the dog is his/hers/theirs</b> <i>el gos és seu</i>	<b>his/hers/theirs is old</b> <i>el seu és vell</i>
<b>our dog</b> <i>el nostre gos</i>	<b>the dog is ours</b> <i>el gos és nostre</i>	<b>ours is old</b> <i>el nostre és vell</i>

We should mention that the independent possessive construction is generally used to avoid the repetition of a noun. Here are a few more examples:

**My room is small and yours is large.**

**His jacket is blue but hers is yellow.**

**Our classes are in the morning and yours are in the afternoon.**

### 2.3. Quantifying adjectives (and adverbs)

In modern English grammar, quantifying adjectives and adverbs now fall under the grammatical category of determiners. However, we refer to them here as adjectives and adverbs because their relation to the corresponding CATALAN forms is clearer.

We will deal with the following quantifiers in this section.

many much a lot (of)	few little a few several a little	enough	(not) any no none (pronoun) at all (emphasizer)
----------------------------	---	--------	--

These quantifiers can be variously modified by the adverbs **too**, **very** and **quite**, which will also form part of our study.

Quantifying adjectives modify both singular and plural nouns and have a great deal in common with quantifying adverbs, which modify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs. The most difficult aspect of the study of these quantifiers is that they usually take on different forms depending on the part of speech they modify. For example, consider the English equivalents of the CATALAN *massa*, an invariable adjective/adverb that indicates an excessive quantity, number or degree.

*massa problemes* (modifying a plural noun) = **too many problems**

*massa vi* (modifying a singular noun) = **too much wine**

*treballo massa* (modifying a verb) = **I work too much**

*massa dolç* (modifying an adjective) = **too sweet**

*massa tard* (modifying an adverb) = **too late**

We will divide this chapter into three main parts: first we will study those quantifiers that, when modifying nouns or verbs, generally include the words **many** and **much**. It will also be helpful to see how these forms change when modifying adjectives and adverbs. In the second section, we will look at those quantifiers that include the words **few** and **little**, again with a note on their modification of adjectives and adverbs. Finally we'll study the terms **enough**, **no**, **any** and **none**, and the emphasiser **at all**.

#### Quantifiers that use *many* and *much*

There are five expressions in English that commonly use either **many**, when modifying plural nouns, or **much** when modifying singular nouns and verbs. (There are also the interrogative expressions **how many** and **how much**, which we'll study in section Sy 5.6.) One of these, **so... that**, is not strictly speaking a quantitative expression, but we've included it here because of its syntactic similarity to the quantifying forms. In the examples section, note that CATALAN makes very few changes to quantifying modifiers, whereas the changes in English are significant.

Quantifiers That Generally Use <i>Many</i> and <i>Much</i> When Modifying Nouns or Verbs			
Plural Nouns	Singular Nouns/Verbs	Adjectives/Adverbs	Catalan Equivalent
too many	too much	too	<i>massa</i>
many/a lot of	a lot of/a great deal of	very/really	<i>molt/-a/-s/-es</i>
(not) many	(not) much	(not) very	<i>(no) gaire/-s</i>
as many ... as	as much ... as	as ... as	<i>tant/-a/-s/-es (as many/much as)/tan as ... as</i>
so many ... that	so much ... that	so ... that	<i>tant/-a/-s/-es (so many/much that)/tan so ... that</i>

Examples:

Too

I have too many problems.

Hunting down the answers to such questions would take too much time.

It weighs too much.

The tea is too hot.

They're working too slowly.

Many/a lot of (a great deal of)/very

There have been many recent initiatives in this field.

We stayed there many days.

There are a lot of useful sites.

There was a lot of snow.

The senator has a great deal of confidence.

It's very difficult.

He runs very/really fast.

In modern English, the word **much** generally isn't used to modify singular nouns and verbs in affirmative expressions. For example, we wouldn't say ~~There was much snow~~. Passive uses, however, are sometimes found in more formal English: **Much work has been done** (*S'ha fet molta feina*), but not ~~We have done much work~~.

Some verbs accept the compound modifier **very much**: for example, we can say **I love you very much** (*T'estimo molt*) but not ~~I love you much~~. Nor can we say ~~I eat very much~~. As a general rule, when modifying singular nouns and verbs, it is safest to use either the informal **a lot (of)** (or the very informal **lots of**) or the more formal **a great deal (of)**.

Although **many** and **a lot of** are completely synonymous when modifying plural nouns, **a lot of** is more common in spoken English. An exception to this is that **many** tends to be used more when modifying time periods: eg **many days** is more common than **a lot of days**.

(Not) many, (not) much, (not) very

Do you know many soldiers?

We didn't see many bears.

Was there much traffic?

He hasn't spent much money.

Have you danced much?

I don't go out much any more.  
 Was it very difficult?  
 They aren't very friendly.  
 She didn't react very quickly.

As many as, as much as, as... as

I have as many problems as you.  
 It offers as much detail as you could want.  
 Adults don't sleep as much as children.  
 It is made as easy as possible.  
 Were there as many as you expected?.

So many that, so much that, so... that (**that** is sometimes omitted)

I had so many problems that I got upset.  
 I drink so much coffee that I can't sit still.  
 I work so much that I have no time for my husband.  
 It's not so hot you can't drink it.  
 He paints so well that they offered him a scholarship.

### Quantifiers that use *few* and *little*

There are three expressions in English that commonly use either **few**, when modifying plural nouns, or **little** when modifying singular nouns and verbs. Note that these terms never modify adjectives or adverbs (the exception is **a little**). English has no equivalent to CATALAN expressions such as *L'aigua és poc calenta*, and must use a negative instead: **The water isn't very hot** (*L'aigua no és gaire calenta*).

Quantifiers that generally use <i>few</i> and <i>little</i> when modifying nouns or verbs			
Plural nouns	Catalan equivalent	Singular nouns/verbs	Catalan equivalent
quite a few	<i>bastants, força</i>	quite a lot (of)	<i>bastant, força</i>
quite a lot (of)		quite a bit (of) quite a little	
a few/several	<i>uns quants/ unes quantes</i>	a little	<i>una mica</i>
few	<i>pocs/poques</i>	little	<i>poc/-a</i>

Quite a few, quite a lot (of), quite a bit (of), quite a little

The book gives quite a few examples.  
 We've drunk quite a bit of coffee this morning.  
 It rained quite a bit last night.

A few, several, a little

Here are a few general rules.  
 The well is several miles away.  
 Would you like a little wine?  
 I try to swim a little every day.

Few, little

**There were few choices.**  
**Little information has been released.**  
**We read little.**

Especially in colloquial English, the use of **not many** and **not much** is generally more common than **few** and **little**. That is, it is more usual to say **We don't have many tomatoes** or **We don't see them much** than to use their equivalents: **We have few tomatoes** and **We see them little**. However, **few** and **little** are commonly used after the adverb **very**. Examples:

**He makes very few mistakes.**  
**We have very little patience.**  
**He studies very little.**

**Enough, no, none, any, at all**

Enough

The word **enough** always indicates a sufficiency. Here are some examples of its use.

**There weren't enough players to form the team.**  
**We have enough oil, for now.**  
**You haven't helped me enough.**  
**Distance education offers a solution where other systems are not extensive enough.**  
**He didn't speak loudly enough.**

The adverb **enough** always follows an adjective or adverb, whereas the CATALAN adverb *prou* always precedes them: eg **strong enough** (*prou fort*), **late enough** (*prou tard*).

When *prou* means *certament*, it is translated in English by **of course** or some similar expression, never by **enough**. Example: –*Vols més vi?* –*Prou!* “**Do you want more wine?**” “**Of course!**”.

It is good to keep in mind that *prou* is sometimes used colloquially to mean *força* or *bastant* (eg *Aquest peix és prou bo!*). In these cases English will never use **enough**, but rather **quite** or even **very** or **really** (**This fish is quite/very/really good!**).

No, none, (not) any

The adjectives **no** and **any** can be used to indicate a zero quantity of nouns. Their distribution is as follows.

**No** and **none** are used to indicate a zero quantity of the subject of a sentence.

**No birds have come to visit us.**  
**No women agreed.**  
**None of the women agreed.**  
**No player can win a match alone.**  
**No alcohol can be sold after 11 pm.**

(**Not**) **any** is used to indicate zero quantity of the objects of a sentence.

**We haven't found any mushrooms.**  
**They didn't send the information to any customers.**  
**They didn't buy any sugar.**



The adjective **any** is not generally used to modify singular count nouns, a case in which the indefinite article is more common. Examples:

**I don't have a car.**

**I don't want a coat.**

At all

The expression **at all** is a negative emphaser and corresponds to the CATALAN *gens*, except that it is occasionally used before plural nouns, in which case its meaning is *en absolut*. Examples:

**We don't have any bread at all.**

**It doesn't interest me at all.**

**I don't trust him at all.**

**He isn't strong at all (or He isn't at all strong).**

**It shouldn't happen to any people at all.**

## 2.4. Comparative and superlative adjectives (and adverbs)

In modern English grammar, comparative and superlative adjective/adverbs now fall under the grammatical category of determiners. However, we refer to them here as adjectives and adverbs because their relation to the corresponding CATALAN forms is clearer.

In English, the two most important comparative and superlative adjectives (or adverbs, when they modify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs) are, respectively, **more** (*més*) and **most** (*el més*). They can be used to modify all nouns and verbs as well as the majority of adjectives and adverbs that are not monosyllabic (or bisyllabic ending in -y).

### 2.4.1. More and most

The use of the comparative adjective/adverb **more** to modify nouns and verbs is fairly straightforward and corresponds closely with CATALAN usage. Examples:

**I have more problems than you.**

**I have more time than you.**

**I study more than you.**

However, the syntax of the superlative **most** when used to modify nouns and verbs is somewhat unusual. Examples:

**I have the most problems.**

**I have the most time.**

**I study the most.**

Alternative constructions, such as **I am the one who has the most problems**, **I am the one who has the most time** or **I am the one who studies the most**, are much less frequently used.

### 2.4.2. Fewer, fewest, less and least

According to many English grammarians, the comparative **fewer** is used to modify plural nouns and **less** is used to modify singular nouns and verbs. Examples:

**I have fewer problems than you.**

**I have less time than you.**

**I study less than you.**

Unfortunately, there are many cases in which **less** is also used to modify plural nouns, especially before numerical quantifiers: eg both **less** and **fewer** can be used in the following sentence:

**Less/fewer than ten people came to the party.**

In fact, it is much more natural to say **less than three weeks** than **fewer than three weeks**, perhaps because the expression more often refers to a single time period and not to three individual weeks.

In conclusion, it is probably best to simply follow the rule: **fewer = not as many**, **less = not as much**. But keep in mind that there can be exceptions.

As in the case of the superlative **most**, constructions using **fewest** and **least** to modify nouns or verbs sound strange to Catalan ears. Examples:

**I have the fewest (or least) problems.**

**I have the least time.**

**I study the least.**

As noted in the previous section, alternative constructions such as **I am the one who has the fewest/least problems**, **I am the one who has the least time** and **I am the one who studies the least** are limited to emphatic contexts.

### 2.4.3. Comparative and superlative adjectives

English adjectives and adverbs form their comparative and superlative forms in two ways. Monosyllabic adjectives and adverbs and bisyllabic ones ending in -y add the suffix **-er** for comparatives and **-est** for superlatives. Here are some common examples:

**slow, slower, slowest**

**happy, happier, happiest**

**early, earlier, earliest**

Most other adjectives and adverbs form the comparative and superlative using, respectively, **more** and **most**.

**beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful**

**nervously, more nervously, most nervously**

Examples:

**Your house is older than his.**

**Who has the oldest house in the town?**

**Esteve has been more successful than Toni.**

**It's been the most successful project of the year.**

**Marc runs faster than Marià.**

**Sílvia is the fastest runner on the team.**

**Sara arrived earlier than Alba.**

**My aunt and uncle always arrive the earliest.**

Adverbs derived from adjectives through the use of the **-ly** suffix are always compared using **more**. Examples:

**Drive more slowly (not ~~slowlier~~).**

**These children work more eagerly (not ~~eagerlier~~) than the others.**

Certain adjectives ending in **-er**, **-le**, **-ow** and **-ure**, as well as some others listed below, can be used with both the suffixes **-er** and **-est** and the words **more** and **most**. For example, we can say both **cleverer** and **more clever**, or **nobler** and **more noble**, etc. Here are some of the most important adjectives in this group.

**slender, simple, narrow, mature, common, cruel, quiet, handsome, remote, stupid**

Comparative adjectives can themselves be positively emphasized by preceding them with **much**, **a lot** or **far**; they can be de-emphasized by preceding them with either **a little** or **slightly**. Examples:

**He is (much/a lot/far) stronger than you.**

**You are (a little/slightly) more practical than I am.**

**She's (much/a lot/far) more intelligent than you.**

**It's (a little/slightly) colder than yesterday.**

#### 2.4.4. Irregular comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs

Most monosyllabic English adjectives and adverbs use the **-er** and **-est** suffixes for their comparative and superlative forms (eg **big**, **bigger**, **biggest**). There are, however, exceptions and the following is a list of the most important.

**good/well, better, best**

**bad/badly, worse, worst**

**many, more, most**

**little, less, least**

**far, farther/further, farthest/furthest**

Examples:

**Joan plays better than Robert.**

**It is designed to offer the best service possible.**

**They live worse than we do (or informally **than us**).**

**It was the worst storm of the year.**

**Sabadell is farther/further than Terrassa.**

**Which country in the world is the farthest/furthest from Catalonia?**

#### 2.4.5. Proportional comparative constructions

English forms its proportional comparative constructions using the expression **the + comparative ...**, **the + comparative ....** Note that the CATALAN equivalent is quite dissimilar.

Examples:

**The more books you read, the more confused you get.**

*Com més llibres llegeixes, més et confons.*

**The more I think about it, the less I like it.**

*Com més hi penso, menys m'agrada.*

**The hotter it is, the slower I go.**

*Com més calor fa, més a poc a poc vaig.*

#### 2.4.6. Use of subject and object pronouns in comparisons

English often uses the objective form of a personal pronoun in comparisons where one might expect a nominative form. For example, it is more common to say **he is taller than me** than **he is taller than I**. The reason for this is that English does not generally like to end sentences with those personal pronouns – **I**, **he**, **she**, **we** and **they** – that are used exclusively as subjects. For example, **whose mushrooms are they?** Another option, especially in formal writing, is to use an auxiliary after the final pronoun: eg **he is taller than I am**. This solution is especially suitable with certain transitive verbs: for example, **he ate more than I did** sounds better to many speakers than **he ate more than me**.

#### 2.5. Participial and gerundial adjectives

As is the case in CATALAN, English uses participles and gerunds as adjectives. The former normally describe temporary states and the latter permanent qualities. Here are some simple examples:

**We were interested because the speech was interesting.**

**I'm surprised because the news is surprising.**

The most common use of participial adjectives in English is to describe emotional states. Here is a list of some of the most important of these adjectives.

amused bored confused convinced disappointed disgusted embarrassed depressed	excited frightened hurt interested scared surprised thrilled tired
---	---

Gerundial adjectives normally describe permanent qualities of the nouns they modify. In some cases there is a direct correspondence with CATALAN gerunds.

alarming amazing depressing embarrassing exciting impending	interesting surprising relaxing shocking thrilling
--	--

In other cases, the English gerund is translated in CATALAN by adjectives or even occasionally by a participle.

amusing annoying boring challenging charming confusing daring disappointing disgusting	entertaining exhausting fascinating frightening misleading pleasing promising satisfying tiring
--	---

Finally, it should be mentioned that some gerundial adjectives have meanings that are completely different to those of the verbs they are derived from.

Verb	Gerundial adjective
act – actuar	acting – <i>interí, suplent, en funcions</i>
become – esdevenir	becoming – <i>atractiu</i>
cut – tallar	cutting – <i>mordaç, sarcàstic</i>
dash – córrer impetuosament	dashing – <i>elegant i viu</i>
drive – conduir	driving – <i>dinàmic, enèrgic</i>
engage – contractar	engaging – <i>captivador</i>
fetch – buscar	fetching – <i>atractiu</i>
miss – no encertar, perdre	missing – <i>absent</i>
move – moure, bellugar-se, traslladar	moving – <i>commovedor</i>
press – prémer	pressing – <i>urgent</i>
revolt – revoltar	revolting – <i>fastigós</i>
search – buscar	searching – <i>penetrant, minuciós</i>
try – intentar	trying – <i>difícil</i>

## 2.6. Interrogative adjectives

In modern English grammar, interrogative adjectives now fall under the grammatical category of determiners. However, we are referring to them here as adjectives because their relation to the corresponding CATALAN forms is clearer.

For information concerning the syntax of interrogative expressions, see Sy 5.2.

### 2.6.1. The difference between *which* and *what*

English has three interrogative adjectives, **which**, **what** and **whose**. Both **which** and **what** are used in the same way as the CATALAN *quin -a*, but there is a difference: we use **which** when the speaker considers that there is a limited choice of options and **what** when the options seem unrestricted. Here are two pairs of examples that show this difference.

**What** time is it?

The movie shows at 7:30, 9:45 and midnight; which time do you want to go?

What books have you read lately? (in general)

Which books do you recommend? (books concerning a specific topic)

Another way of looking at this is to say that we use **which** when we consider that we know what all the possible responses might be, and we use **what** when we have no idea what the responses might be. Compare:

**What** is your address? (The speaker has no idea what it might be.)

**Which** TV channel do you watch most often? (The speaker believes he knows what the possibilities are.)

### 2.6.2. The interrogative adjective *whose*

CATALAN has no equivalent to the English interrogative adjective **whose** and its syntax can present difficulties. The main thing to remember is that **whose** is an adjective and goes before the noun it modifies. The speaker is asking a question concerning the possessor of the object modified by **whose**. Here are some simple examples.

**Whose** glass is this?

**Whose** car was it?

**Whose** paintings are those?

**Whose** cats were they?

It is perhaps helpful to remember that the syntax of **whose** is exactly the same as that of **which** (*quin -a*). Examples:

**Which** papers are these?

**Whose** papers are these?

**Which** dog weighs the most?

**Whose** dog weighs the most?

When the complements are understood, **which**, **what** and **whose** can be used as pronouns. Examples:

(Holding two jackets) **Which** is yours?

**What** is the issue?

**Whose** are they?

### 2.6.3. Use of *which*, *what* and *whose* in indirect questions

The three interrogative adjectives **which**, **what** and **whose** can also be used to head indirect questions. In this case there is no inversion of subject and verb. Examples:

I don't remember which books she took.  
Do you know what time the train leaves?  
I can't tell whose dog is barking.

### 3. Determiners

In modern English grammatical terminology, determiners are considered to be words that limit or specify the nouns they modify. The most common examples are articles, demonstratives, possessives, quantifiers and other less easily classified terms such as **all**, **some** and **other**, which we will refer to as indefinites. Remember that we have classified the possessives and quantifiers as adjectives or adverbs, due to their similarity with the corresponding forms in CATALAN (see sections Sy 2.2. and Sy 2.3., respectively).

#### 3.1. Articles

See section Mo 3. for the morphology of the articles.

##### 3.1.1. The definite article *the*

As is the case in CATALAN, the definite article **the** always precedes the noun it modifies and indicates that it is definite and specific. However, unlike CATALAN, English does not use the definite article when the reference is general and unspecific. Compare the following cases:

**The students are distributed into six groups** (a reference to some specific students).  
**Students need another kind of training** (general, unspecific reference).

When referring to time periods, English usually omits the article after the prepositions **at**, **by**, **after** and **before**, but retains it after **in**, **on** and **during**. Examples:

**at dawn, at sunrise, at noon, at sunset, at night, at midnight**  
**by day, by night**  
**after midnight, before dawn**  
**in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening**  
**on the third of June** (but **on Christmas Day**)  
**during the summer**

Exception: The article isn't used after the preposition **in** when followed by a month or year: for example, **I was born in June** or **I was born in 1975**.

When referring to the immediately preceding or following days, weeks, months or years, English uses the adjectives **next** and **last**, respectively. Unlike CATALAN, however, the definite article is not used. Examples:

**I saw her last week.**  
*La setmana passada la vaig veure.*  
**We'll buy more heating oil next month.**  
*Comprarem més fuel el mes vinent.*  
**You won't meet them till next year.**  
*No els coneixeràs fins a l'any que ve.*

There are also some common English expressions for which the article is not normally used.

**to be in bed**  
**to be in jail or to go to jail**  
**to be in hospital** (BrE)  
**to make breakfast, make lunch, make dinner**

### 3.1.2. The indefinite articles *a* and *an*

As is the case in CATALAN, the indefinite articles in English are used to indicate a single but unspecified noun. Examples:

**It has a section on publication.**  
**I need a new car.**

It's important to keep in mind that **a** and **an** are used only before singular nouns. In fact, English has no plural indefinite article and for this purpose uses the affirmative determiner **some** (see section Sy 3.3.2.), which translates all of the following six forms: *uns, unes, algun, alguna, alguns, algunes*. Examples:

**There are some basic rules.**  
**He shared some thoughts on digital culture.**

The distribution of the articles **a** and **an** and the adjective **one**, all translated by *un/-a* in CATALAN, can also cause confusion. In general, English only uses **one** when the meaning is exactly one, not two or three; when emphasizing singularity, or when contrasting one with another. Examples:

**They've been working for an hour.**  
**Give me a pound of apples.**  
**Why don't you take a pill?**  
**They only have one child.**  
**There is only one book I really like.**  
**It is a four-month course with just one lecturer.**

In negative and conditional sentences, the indefinite article is often used to modify singular count nouns, where CATALAN uses *cap*:

**I don't need a prize.**  
*No necessito cap premi.*  
**If you make a mistake, we win.**  
*Si feu cap falta, guanyem nosaltres.*

Finally, unlike CATALAN, English requires the indefinite article before professions. Examples:

**Amada is a biologist.**  
*L'Amada és biòloga.*  
**Joan is a pilot.**  
*En Joan és pilot.*

### 3.2. Demonstrative determiners

See section Mo 3. for some comments on the pronunciation of these determiners.



The demonstrative determiner **this** and its plural **these** indicate that the noun they modify is relatively close, whereas **that** and its plural **those** refer to something further away. Although, broadly speaking, their use is the same as their corresponding forms in CATALAN (*aquest -a, aquests -es, aquell -a, aquells -es*), English tends to use **that** and **those** more frequently; specifically, anything out of reach, that is, further away than the length of one's arm, can be modified by **that**, where CATALAN would be more likely to use *aquest -a*. Examples:

**This pen is mine.**  
**That watch is broken.**  
**These books are out of print.**  
**Those people look lost.**

Remember too that **this** and **that** are also pronouns and correspond to the CATALAN *això* and *allò*.

### 3.3. Indefinite determiners

Determiners help define the nouns they precede. Indefinite determiners broaden the scope to new or different references.

#### 3.3.1. Universal determiners

##### All

The determiner **all** indicates the total number, amount, or quantity of the noun following it. It is almost always translated by the CATALAN *tot/-a/-s/-es*. Examples:

**All the windows are open.**  
**I've spent all my money.**  
**We send these emails to all our clients.**

The same constructions using **all of** (eg **all of the windows**, **all of my money**, etc.), while not incorrect, are much less usual. However, **of** must normally be used with the object pronouns **us**, **you** and **them** (eg **all of us**, **all of you**, **all of them**).

When the reference is generic, English does not use the definite article, nor is the preposition **of** possible.

**All dogs like meat.**  
**All rules have their exceptions.**

Unlike CATALAN, English doesn't generally use the determiner **all** to modify singular count nouns, but rather prefers the combination **the whole** + noun (*el nom sencer*). Examples:

**I read the whole book** (better than **I read all the book**).  
**I met their whole family** (better than **I met all their family**).

An exception is made for time periods:

**I've worked all morning** (= **I've worked the whole morning**).  
**They spend all day studying** (= **They spend the whole day studying**).

Note too that the following time period expressions using **all** omit the definite article:

**all day, all morning, all afternoon, all evening, all night**

The determiner **all** can also come after a subject noun or pronoun, or after an object pronoun (but not after a noun). Remember that the preposition **of** is obligatory before **us**, **you** and **them**. Examples:

**The deer all** (or **All the deer**) **started running**.  
**We all** (or **All of us**) **know you're lying**.  
**We have sold them all** (or **all of them**).  
**We have sold all the books** (not **...the books all**).

Finally, the determiner **all** can precede any numeral except **two**, where the determiner **both** must be used (see the following section):

**I've taken up all four suitcases**.

### Both

The combination **all two** is not possible in English (see above).

The determiner **both**, relating to two in conjunction, can be used in three ways: alone, followed by **the**, or followed by the group **of the**. The first alternative is the most usual. Examples:

**Both boys are working hard** (more usual than **Both the boys...** or **Both of the boys...**).

As with the determiner **all**, **both** can come after a subject noun or pronoun, or after an object pronoun (but not after a noun). Here too, the preposition **of** must be used before the pronouns **us**, **you** and **them**.

**The boys both decided to stay home** (or **Both boys...**).  
**They both want the same thing** (or **Both of them...**).  
**I've hidden them both** (or **I've hidden both of them**).  
**Both of my brothers have been to Paris** (or **My brothers have both been to Paris**).  
**I saw you both** (or **both of you**) **last night**.  
**She made a pot of tea for both of us** (or **for us both**).

### Every, each

Both **every** and **each** are translated by the CATALAN adjective *cada*, and in many cases there is little difference between the two. Examples:

**Every/Each student passed the test**.  
**We gave a present to every/each boy**.  
**I learn a little more every/each day**.

An important difference, however, is that the determiner **every** can be used generically (eg **Every gorilla is strong** = **All gorillas are strong**), whereas **each** can have only specific reference, calling attention to the members of a group as individuals. Examples:

**Every creature** (= **All creatures**) **must eat to live**.  
**Every philosopher** (= **All philosophers**) **respect Plato**.  
**Each nurse** (better than **Every nurse**) **has their own locker**.  
**We've examined each case carefully** (better than **every case**).

Another difference between **each** and **every** is that only **every** can be pre-modified:

**We danced almost every night**.

Finally, unlike **all**, **both** and **each**, the determiner **every** cannot be used as a pronoun.

### 3.3.2. Affirmative determiners

The determiner **some** is used most often in affirmative contexts; it corresponds to the plural indefinite articles *uns*, *unes*, the adjective *algun/-a/-s/-es*, and expressions such as *una mica de*, or no determiner at all. It indicates an unspecific quantity.

**Can you fetch some chairs?**

**There are some letters for you.**

**We have some milk in the fridge.**

The determiner **some** can be used in questions, especially when the speaker anticipates or desires a positive response. Hence, **some** is commonly used when making offers. The determiner **any** (see below) is more usual in neutral questions.

**Do you have some pictures of your baby?** (The speaker believes this is probably the case.)

**Can we give you some help?** (In contrast, using **any** – **Can we give you any help?** – gives the offer a rather tentative air.)

The determiner **some** is also used when indicating a part of a whole.

**Some doctors believe it is true.**

**Some folks left early.**

Finally, in colloquial speech it can be used to express admiration or anger.

**That's some black-eye!**

**Some idiot has scratched my car!**

### 3.3.3. Non-affirmative determiners

See also section Sy 2.3.

The non-affirmative determiners **any** and **either** are used in questions and negations and are not usually translated in CATALAN. (An exception is that **any** can optionally be translated by *cap* when modifying count nouns.) They should not be confused with the elective determiners **any** and **either**, which mean, respectively, *qualsevol* and *qualsevol dels dos* (see the following section). Note also that the non-affirmative determiner **either** is only used before count nouns. Examples:

**Have you made any changes?**

**No, I haven't made any changes.**

**Have you drunk any water?**

**No, we haven't drunk any water.**

**Do you like either city?**

**No, we don't like either city.**

Unless we wish to imply that the speaker anticipates or desires a positive response (see **some**), **any** is generally the form used in questions. Examples:

**Did you have any problems?**

**Has she had any experience?**

Although **any** is generally not used before a singular count noun, where the use of the article **a/an** is more common (see Sy 3.1.2.), there can be exceptions: **I haven't got any idea what they did.**

### 3.3.4. Elective determiners

When used as elective determiners, **any** (translated in CATALAN by *qualsevol*) offers an unlimited choice, whereas **either** (translated by *qualsevol dels dos*) offers a choice between two. Examples:

**Any girl can learn maths.**

**Any wine is fine with me.**

**Either road will get you there.**

The only case in which the elective **any** is used in a negative sentence is when accompanied by the adverb **just**. Note the differences between the following two pairs of sentences.

Non-affirmative **any**: **He doesn't eat any cheese.**

*No menja formatge.*

Elective **any**: **He won't eat just any cheese.**

*No menjarà un formatge qualsevol.*

Non-affirmative **any**: **We don't read any books.**

*No llegim llibres.*

Elective **any**: **We don't read just any books.**

*No llegim uns llibres qualssevol.*

### 3.3.5. Negative determiners

See also section Sy 2.3.

The negative determiner **no** can modify both count and non-count nouns; before the former it can be translated in CATALAN by *cap*, and before the latter it is untranslated. The negative determiner **neither** can modify only count nouns and is generally translated in CATALAN by *cap dels dos*.

Because English generally doesn't allow a double negative, the negative determiners **no** and **neither** can only be used with affirmative verbs. When modifying objects, their meaning is equivalent to that of the non-affirmative determiners **any** and **either** (see Sy 3.3.3.): for example, **we have no bananas = we don't have any bananas** (*no tenim plàtans*) and **he took neither pill = he didn't take either pill** (*no va prendre cap de les dues píndoles*). However, it is important to remember that they are the only option available when modifying the subject of a sentence; that is, we can say: **no children were admitted** (*no es va deixar entrar cap nen*) and **neither solution will be effective** (*cap de les dues solucions no serà efectiva*) but not ~~**not any children were admitted**~~ nor ~~**either solution will not be effective**~~. Examples:

**Only 21% have no previous experience.**

**No women agreed.**

**No player can win a match alone.**

**Neither car runs very well.**

**I wanted neither book in my home.**

### 3.3.6. Alternative determiners

The alternative determiner **other** is translated in CATALAN by *altre/-a*, **another** is always singular and translated by *un/una altre/-a* and **some other** is plural and translated by *uns/unes altres*. Examples:

**His other works include several novels.**  
**Other people have the same problem.**  
**We still haven't seen his other photos.**  
**They called us the other day.**  
**Another key factor is investment.**  
**Would you like another glass of cider?**  
**Let's put it off for another day.**

### 3.3.7. The predeterminer *half*

When the predeterminer **half** is used to modify a definite noun, it is never preceded by the definite article **the**. We mention this because its CATALAN equivalent, *meitat*, is a noun that requires the article. Examples:

**Half the people left early.**  
**I spend half my time on the phone.**

Note that the expression **half of my time** is also possible and that, as is the case with **all** and **both**, the preposition **of** must precede the pronouns **us**, **you** and **them**. What's more, **of** is also necessary when **half** is itself pre-modified. Examples:

**I've only got half of them.**  
**I'll be on vacation the first half of August.**

When **half** modifies an indefinite noun it is usually followed by the indefinite article. We mention this because the CATALAN equivalent in this case, *mig/mitja*, is never followed by an article. Examples:

**It took us half an hour.**  
**Unemployment in Catalonia is over half a million.**

Finally, the syntax in English for a combination of numbers and fractions is usually number + **and a half** + noun. Examples:

**Two and a half hours**  
**Three and a half kilos**

There is an exception with the use of the determiner **a/an**: **an hour and a half**, **a day and a half**, etc.

## 4. Pronouns

As is the case in CATALAN, in English pronouns are forms that substitute nouns or noun phrases.

### 4.1. Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns in English can be nominative, objective, reflexive or possessive. We have studied the possessive pronouns along with the possessive adjectives in section Sy 2.2. and will study the reflexive pronouns along with the reciprocal pronouns in section Sy 4.6. In this section we will look at the nominative and objective personal pronouns.

#### 4.1.1. Nominative personal pronouns

The following table shows the English nominative pronouns and their corresponding forms in CATALAN.

Nominative pronouns		
Person	Singular	Plural
1 <sup>st</sup>	I ( <i>jo</i> )	we ( <i>nosaltres</i> )
2 <sup>nd</sup>	you ( <i>tu, vós, vostè</i> )	you ( <i>vosaltres, vostès</i> )
3 <sup>rd</sup>	he ( <i>ell</i> )	they ( <i>ells, elles</i> )
	she ( <i>ella</i> )	
	it ( <i>things</i> )	

Modern English doesn't distinguish between the polite and formal forms in the second person. Therefore, *tu, vosaltres, vós, vostè* and *vostès* are all translated by the **you** form.

With the exception of the imperative voice, English must always use a pronoun as the subject when no other noun is mentioned. Note also that, unlike CATALAN, English doesn't distinguish masculine and feminine in the third person plural. Examples:

*És aquí* – **He is here, She is here, It is here.**

*Són aquí* – **They are here** (whether referring to men, women, books, chairs, etc.).

Except in very formal English, the nominative personal pronouns are always followed by a verb or auxiliary. Examples:

**She eats more than I do** (better than **She eats more than I**).

**You're as tired as we are** (better than **You're as tired as we**).

Remember that nominative personal pronouns are never used after prepositions. Examples:

**Come with us.** (Not ~~**Come with we.**~~)

**Between you and me, I think he loves her.** (Not ~~**Between you and I.**~~)

#### 4.1.2. Objective personal pronouns

The following table shows the English objective pronouns and their corresponding forms in CATALAN.

Objective pronouns		
Person	Singular	Plural
1 <sup>st</sup>	<b>me</b> ( <i>me, m', em, 'm</i> )	<b>us</b> ( <i>nos, ens, 'ns</i> )
2 <sup>nd</sup>	<b>you</b> ( <i>te, t', et, 't, vos, us, lo, l', el, 'l, la</i> )	<b>you</b> ( <i>vos, us, els, les</i> )
3 <sup>rd</sup>	<b>him</b> ( <i>lo, l', el, 'l, li</i> )	<b>them</b> ( <i>los, els, 'ls, les</i> )
	<b>her</b> ( <i>la, l', li</i> )	
	<b>it</b> ( <i>lo, l', el, 'l, la, ho</i> )	

As in the case of nominative pronouns, English doesn't distinguish between the polite and formal forms in the second person. Example:

**I love you.**

*T'estimo; us estimo (a vosaltres, a vós); l'estimo (a vostè); els estimo (a vostès).*

In colloquial English, the objective pronouns are often used as the second element in comparisons and equivalences (after **than** and **as**). Examples:

**I'm taller than her.** (Also **I'm taller than she is.**)

**We don't work as hard as them.** (Also **We don't work as hard as they do.**)

Remember that the objective forms must always be used after a preposition:

**He was behind her.**

**These books are for them.**

#### 4.1.3. Singular *they*

The third person plural form **they** and its inflected forms (**them**, **their**, **theirs**) are often used with singular antecedents. The only acceptable singular pronoun in this context would be **he** (and its inflected forms), and this has the disadvantage of seeming to make the reference exclusively masculine. Examples:

**If anyone can't attend the meeting, they should let me know.**

**Everybody complained, but the police did nothing.**

#### 4.2. The pronoun *it*

The principal use in English of the pronoun **it** is to refer to an antecedent that is a thing or an abstraction; the other third person personal pronouns – **he**, **she**, **him**, **her**, etc. – generally refer only to people or animals whose names are known. Remember that the third person plural pronouns – **they**, **them**, **their**, **theirs** – are used to refer to both people and things.

Examples:

Where did you put the bread? It's in the pantry.  
Did you wash my car/shirt? No, I didn't wash it.  
Well, shall we buy it?  
I hadn't noticed it.  
Where have you put them?

That said, there are three other uses of **it** in which the pronoun does not refer to an antecedent.

#### 4.2.1. Anticipatory *it*

When the subject of a sentence is an infinitive or a relative clause, English normally inverts the sentence and begins it with the anticipatory subject **it**. Examples:

It's important to read the instructions carefully.  
It's lucky that we met.

It's good to keep in mind that, unlike in CATALAN, this construction is never used when the subject is a noun. Examples:

It's interesting to compare the two versions.  
It's interesting that you mention this.  
This book is interesting. (Not ~~It's interesting, this book.~~)

#### 4.2.2. Identifying *it*

The pronoun **it** is used as a subject when identifying persons. Note that there is no concordance between the singular **it** and the plural complement. Examples:

Who is there? It's me. It's John. It's us. It's John and Mary.  
Can you see who it is? Yes... It's her. It's Monica. It's them. It's Pere and Monica.  
I would have sworn it was you.

#### 4.2.3. *It* referring to time, weather and distance

The pronoun **it** is also used as a subject when referring to time, weather conditions and distance. Examples:

Time

It's two-thirty. It's later than you think.  
What day's today? It's Thursday. What's the date? It's the third of May.

Weather conditions

It's sunny. It's foggy. It's windy. It's hot/warm/cool/chilly/cold.  
It's nice (out). It's 40 degrees below zero.

Distance

It's forty-eight hundred kilometres from New York to LA.  
How far is their house from here? It's about two hundred yards.



### 4.3. Interrogative pronouns

The interrogative pronouns **who** and **whom** refer to persons, and the interrogative pronoun **what** refers to things or abstractions. The syntax for **who** and **what** is the same and depends on their grammatical role, whereas in modern English **whom** is rarely seen except following a preposition.

All three of these interrogative pronouns can also be used as relative pronouns (see section Sy 4.4.3.).

#### 4.3.1. *Who* and *what* as subjects

When **who** or **what** are the subjects of the sentence, the syntax is simply subject + verb. The pronoun **whom** is never used as a subject. Examples:

**Who came?**  
**What happened?**  
**Who has followed the tourists?**  
**What caused the gas leak?**

#### 4.3.2. *Who* and *what* as direct objects

When **who** or **what** are the direct objects of the sentence, the syntax is **who/what** + auxiliary + subject + verb (for more details concerning interrogative constructions, see section Sy 5.4.). Examples:

**Who do you love?**  
**What did you do?**  
**Who have the tourists followed?**  
**What did the gas leak cause?**

In very formal English, **who** is substituted by **whom** (**whom do you love?**). This construction is, however, no longer idiomatic.

#### 4.3.3. *Who* and *what* as prepositional objects

When **who** or **what** are the prepositional objects of the sentence, there are two possible syntaxes, one very formal and the other more usual. In the formal syntax, **who** is substituted by **whom**; usually, however, the sentence is restructured with the preposition following the verb or its complement, if there is one. Here are the two syntaxes.

More usual: **who/what** + auxiliary + subject + verb [+ complements] + prep.  
Very formal: prep. + **who/what** + auxiliary + subject + verb

Examples:

**Who did you dance with?** (Very formal: **With whom did you dance?**)  
**What are they talking about?** (Very formal: **About what are they talking?**)  
**Who are you referring to?** (Very formal: **To whom are you referring?**)  
**What does it depend on?** (Very formal: **On what does it depend?**)

The interrogative pronoun **who** can also be used as an indirect object. In this case also, the prepositions **to** and **for** are placed at the end of the expression. Examples:

**Who did you give the money to?** (Very formal: **To whom did you...**).

**Who have you bought those clothes for?** (Very formal: **For whom have you...**).

Finally, for the use of **who**, **whom** and **what** as relative pronouns, see section Sy 4.4.

#### 4.4. Relative pronouns

Relative pronouns in English can be divided into those that act as adjectives and, less commonly, those that act as nouns. The former always have an antecedent, whereas the latter often don't. Here is an example of each.

Adjectival: **She's the girl who cuts my hair.** (The adjectival relative pronoun **who** has **the girl** as an antecedent.)

*És la noia que em talla els cabells.*

Nominal: **What I want is a watch.** (The nominal relative pronoun **what** has no antecedent.)

*El que vull és un rellotge.*

In this chapter we'll also give examples of interrogative pronouns and adverbs used as relatives.

##### 4.4.1. Adjectival relative pronouns

The choice of adjectival relative pronoun depends first of all on whether the pronoun is restrictive or non-restrictive. A restrictive relative pronoun defines its antecedent and a non-restrictive relative pronoun simply gives us more information about it. Examples:

Restrictive: **The man who sells peanuts is here.**

The relative clause **who sells peanuts** tells us who the man is.

Non-restrictive: **My father, who sells peanuts, is here.**

The relative clause **who sells peanuts** merely gives us more information about **my father**; in saying **my father**, we know who he is.

Note that non-restrictive relative clauses are always set off with commas.

The choice of relative pronouns also depends on the grammatical category of the pronoun and on whether the pronoun reference is human or non-human.

We will organize this section on adjectival relative pronouns according to the grammatical function of the relative pronoun within the subordinate clause it heads.

##### Adjectival relative pronouns as subject or direct object

The most common use of relative pronouns is as the subject or direct object of the subordinate clause. Here is a brief summary.

The human restrictive pronoun is generally **who**, though **that** is sometimes used. It is required when the pronoun is the subject, but usually omitted when the pronoun is the direct object.

The non-human restrictive pronoun is generally **that**, though **which** is sometimes used. It is always required when the pronoun is the subject, but usually omitted when the pronoun is the direct object.

The human non-restrictive pronoun is always required and is always **who**, though **whom** can be used in very formal English.

The non-human non-restrictive pronoun is always required and is always **which**.

### Relative pronoun as subject

Human, restrictive:

**The girl who cuts my hair is named Dolores.**

Human, non-restrictive:

**Gemma's boyfriend, who just bought himself a new car, wants us all to come over and see it.**

Non-human, restrictive:

**The fog that covered the valley soon burned off.**

Non-human, non-restrictive:

**The Space Needle, which was constructed in 1962, is symbolic of Seattle.**

Although the use of **that** when referring to humans in restrictive clauses is common, many stylists discourage its use. An exception, however, is made when the antecedent is a superlative:

**He's the best midfielder that (better than who) has ever played for Barcelona.**

Although the pronoun **which** is often used in restrictive clauses, such a use can often produce unintended ambiguities; it is safer to use **that**. An exception is when the speaker prefers to avoid a repetition of the word **that**:

**Last night we saw that play which has been causing all the controversy.**

### Relative pronoun as direct object

Human, restrictive:

**The girl we met last night is named Glòria.**

Human, non-restrictive:

**The fisherman, who (or whom in very formal writing) we saw fall off his boat, is now suffering from hypothermia.**

Non-human, restrictive:

**The bananas you bought this morning are too ripe.**

Non-human, non-restrictive:

**Our groceries, which we had just bought, ended up all over the street.**

### Adjectival relative pronouns as prepositional objects

When adjectival relative pronouns, both human and non-human, are prepositional objects, English can construct the sentence in various manners. When the pronoun comes after a preposition, in both restrictive and non-restrictive cases, the pronouns must always be **whom** and **which**. However, in common use English often prefers to shift the preposition to the end of the clause. Here are some examples of all these uses.

For human reference in restrictive clauses, the pronouns can be either **who** or **that**, or eliminated:

Very formal: **They are the children with whom Jaume used to play.**

Less formal: **They are the children who/that Jaume used to play with.**

Most usual: **They are the children Ø Jaume used to play with.**

For non-human reference in restrictive clauses, the pronouns can be either **that** or **which**, or can be eliminated:

Very formal: **These are the tools with which we repair skis.**

Less formal: **These are the tools that/which we repair skis with.**

Most usual: **These are the tools Ø we repair skis with.**

For human reference in non-restrictive clauses, the pronouns can be either **whom** or **who**, but their presence is always necessary.

Very formal: **Our children, whom we depend on, are very generous.**

Most usual: **Our children, who we depend on, are very generous.**

For non-human reference in non-restrictive clauses, the pronoun can only be **which**; it is always necessary.

Very formal: **Our house, in which we'd lived for ten years, was completely destroyed.**

Most usual: **Our house, which we'd lived in for ten years, was completely destroyed.**

### Adjectival relative pronouns as genitives

In genitive contexts, English uses the form **whose** for both restrictive and non-restrictive, and both human and non-human reference. For non-human reference, some stylists prefer the structure noun + **of which**. Examples:

**Today I met a man whose wife works with your daughter.**

**Do you see that old car whose tyres (or the tyres of which) are all flat?**

**This is Alba, whose sister you already know.**

**We passed by the Royal Palace, whose roof (or the roof of which) had been damaged in the bombing.**

### Adjectival relative pronouns as adverbials

There is one important adverbial relative pronoun, **where**, and two of lesser importance, **when** and **why**. The use of the latter is generally optional. Examples:

**It is the shop where we buy all our books.**

**Let's meet at Cal Ramon, where the beer is cold and the food is hot.**

**That was the year (when) we met.**

**That's the reason (why) I did it.**

### When the antecedent is a clause

A special case is when the relative pronoun refers to a clause. In this case, English always uses **which**. Example:

**He had locked the door to the men's room, which we discovered too late.**

#### 4.4.2. Nominal relative pronouns

The proper use of nominal relative pronouns can be complicated. We will begin with a look at personal relative pronouns, distinguishing those with specific reference from those with non-specific reference. In the second section, we will study non-personal relative pronouns, again distinguishing those with specific reference from those with non-specific reference, but also, in the case of the specific non-personal pronouns, distinguishing between definite and non-definite reference.

##### Personal nominal relative pronouns

The specific personal nominal relative pronouns are **who**, **the one(s)**, or **the one(s) who**. When the reference is non-specific we use **whoever** or, more rarely and only when the pronoun is an object, **whomever**. **The one(s)** is used when the pronoun is an object and **the one(s) who** when it is the subject.

Note that **who** is never used as the subject of an affirmative sentence; we must use either **the one(s) who** (specific) or **whoever** (non-specific).

Specific reference (when referring to specific persons, not just anybody):

Subject: **The ones who stayed to help are heroes.**

Subject: **He is the one who created these characters.**

Direct object: **I saw who (or the one) you were helping.**

Indirect object: **The song is dedicated to the ones we love.**

Non-specific reference (when referring to anybody):

Subject: **Whoever said that is a liar.**

Subject: **Whoever wins will have our support.**

Direct object: **Whoever you marry had better know how to cook.**

Indirect object: **Whoever you sent fliers to, it wasn't me.**

##### Impersonal nominal relative pronouns

The specific impersonal nominal relative pronouns are **the one(s) [that]**, when the reference is definite, and **what** when the reference is indefinite. When the reference is non-specific we use either **whatever** or **whichever**, the latter when the speaker considers that there is a limited choice of options. These forms are not affected by grammatical category.

As for the difference between **the one(s) [that]** and **what**, though both are translated by the CATALAN *el que* (and variants), the former corresponds to the expression *aquell que* (and variants), whereas the latter corresponds to *allò que*.

Specific reference (when referring to specific things or abstractions):

Definite: **These books are last year's and the ones on the shelves are new.**

Definite: **Do you want to wear this shirt or the one you wore yesterday?**

Indefinite: **You'll never guess what happened last night!**

Indefinite: **What he says and what he does are two different things.**

Non-specific reference (when referring to things in general):

**Whatever you want you can have.**

**I took whatever they gave me.**

**Whatever you did, it was wrong.**

**There are three coats in the closet; take whichever you like.**

#### 4.4.3. Interrogative pronouns and adverbs used as relatives

All the interrogative pronouns (see Sy 4.3.) and adverbs (see Sy 6.7.) can be used as relatives. Remember that, in these cases, there is no inversion of subject and verb. Examples:

**He wouldn't admit where he had gone.**

**She asked him when he could start.**

**I've found out why they were in such a bad mood.**

**Did you see how he scored that goal?**

**I wonder who she's loving now.**

**I can't remember which train we're supposed to take.**

**She wouldn't tell me what the problem was.**

#### 4.5. Indefinite pronouns (and adverbs)

Indefinite pronouns refer to one or more unspecified persons or things, and indefinite adverbs to an unspecified place.

See also section Sy 3.3.

The personal indefinite pronouns ending in the suffixes **-one** or **-body** are completely synonymous.

The indefinite adverbs ending in **-place** are informal alternatives to the **-where** adverbs. They are most often found in American speech and generally not used in formal writing.

Double negations, though allowed, should be avoided in English. Instead non-affirmative pronouns and adverbs are used in a negative sense when the verb is negated. Compare:

**I did not see anyone.** (Not ~~I didn't see no one.~~)

(In this example, **I saw no one** is also possible.)

**I did not send it to anyone.** (Not ~~I did not send it to no one.~~)

(In this example, **I sent it to no one**, while possible, is quite unusual.)

**We haven't gone anywhere.** (Not ~~We haven't gone nowhere.~~)

(In this example, **We have gone nowhere**, while possible, is quite unusual.)

Non-affirmative pronouns cannot be used as the subject of negative sentences:

**No one came.** (Not ~~Anyone did not come.~~)

When expressing possession, the indefinite personal pronouns use the Saxon genitive:

**Someone's coat is lying out on the lawn.**

**It was nobody's fault.**

Adjectives are placed after all the indefinite pronouns:

**everything available**

**someone interesting**

**nothing major**

The adverb **else** is positioned after the indefinite pronoun with the meaning of **other** or **more** (we'll offer examples in the relevant sections). Note too that these forms also take the Saxon genitive.

**everyone else**

**everything else**

**someone else**

**nobody else**

**someone else's problem**

**nobody else's business**

#### 4.5.1. Universal indefinite pronouns

The English universal indefinite pronouns are **everybody/everyone** (*tothom* or *cadascú*) and **everything** (*tot* [*totes les coses*]), and the universal indefinite adverb is **everywhere** (*per tot arreu*). Remember that **everybody** and **everyone**, in spite of their plural reference, are singular and take a singular verb (as does *tothom*). Note also that when the CATALAN *tot* is used as a pronoun, it is generally translated by **everything** and not **all**. Finally, it is common to use the plural possessive forms **their** and **theirs** with the singular antecedents **everybody** and **everything**, though some style guides discourage this. Examples:

**Everybody is free to have their (or his or her) own opinion.**

**Everyone's vote counts.**

**Everyone else has gone home.**

**Everything is happening too fast. (Not ~~All is happening...~~)**

**Thanks for everything.**

**We had to sell everything.**

**His chair was spotless; everything else was covered with dust.**

**I've looked everywhere but can't find the money.**

**Nowadays you find McDonald's restaurants everywhere.**

#### 4.5.2. Affirmative indefinite pronouns

The English affirmative indefinite pronouns are **somebody/someone** (*algú*) and **something** (*alguna cosa*), and the adverb is **somewhere** (*algun lloc*). These are used not only in affirmations, but also in questions when the speaker anticipates or desires a positive response. Examples:

**Someone has left this package for you.**

**I saw someone taking pictures of your house.**

**Has someone been bothering you? (The speaker thinks this is likely.)**

**I must be drinking someone else's coffee.**

**There's something the matter with my computer.**

**I want to tell you something very important.**

**Would you like something to eat? (The speaker hopes you'll say yes.)**

**Let's go somewhere quiet and talk.**

Keep in mind that, in certain contexts, **somebody** can mean **someone important**.

**Because he won the award now he really thinks he's somebody.**

#### 4.5.3. Non-affirmative indefinite pronouns

The English non-affirmative indefinite pronouns **anybody/anyone** and **anything**, and the adverb **anywhere** have three meanings in English. First of all, when used with a negative verb, they correspond, respectively, to the CATALAN *ningú, res* and *enlloc* or *cap lloc*. We will indicate the cases in which the expression can be restated with an affirmative verb and a negative pronoun or adverb. Examples:

**I haven't seen anyone yet. I haven't seen anyone else.**

(Or **I have seen no one. I have seen no one else.**)

**We don't want to depend on anybody.**

**We don't need anyone else's help.** (Unusual: **We will need no one else's help.**)

**We haven't taken anything.** (Or **We have taken nothing.**)

**Anything else?**

**It didn't say anywhere that we had to pay.**

**I don't want to go anywhere.**

Secondly, this group of non-affirmative pronouns can correspond to the CATALAN *qualsevol persona, qualsevol cosa* or *qualsevol lloc*. Examples:

**Anybody can look you up on the internet.**

**"What do you want for dinner?" "Anything is fine with me."**

**You can find love anywhere.**

Although sentences of this type are nearly always affirmative, an exception is the phrase **just + non-affirmative**:

**I won't go out with just anyone.**

**A rational person doesn't believe just anything.**

**Cats won't do their business just anywhere.**

Finally, in conditional and interrogative sentences, the English non-affirmatives correspond to the CATALAN indefinite pronouns *algú, alguna cosa, algun lloc, ningú, res* and *enlloc*. Remember that in these cases the affirmatives **someone/somebody, something** and **somewhere** are used when the speaker desires or anticipates an affirmative response. Examples:

**Has anybody seen my keys?**

**If anyone calls, I'm out.**

**Did he suspect anything?**

**If you break anything, you'll have to pay for it!**

**I never go anywhere without my cell phone.**

**If I see your friends anywhere, I'll let you know**

#### 4.5.4. Negative indefinite pronouns

The English negative indefinite pronouns are **nobody/no one** (*ningú*), **nothing** (*res*) and **none** (*cap*), and the adverb is **nowhere** (*enlloc*). Moreover, the indefinite determiner **neither** (*cap dels dos*) can also be used as a pronoun. These pronouns are most often used as the



subjects of sentences, though they can be used as objects if the verb is affirmative (see the previous section). Examples:

**No one** came.  
**Nothing** has changed.  
**None** of the solutions was/were successful.  
**There** was nowhere to hide.  
**Neither** of them liked the show.

#### 4.5.5. Other indefinite pronouns

The indefinite determiners **the other** (*l'altre*), **another** (*un altre*) and **either** (*qualsevol dels dos*) can also be used as indefinite pronouns. What's more, the pronoun **one** can be considered an indefinite determiner in certain contexts. Examples:

**One** girl was willing to help us, but **the other** wasn't.  
**Those** cookies are great! Can I have **another**?  
**Which** movie do you want to see? **Either** is fine.  
**One** twin's eyes were blue, but **the other's** were brown.  
**They** are both attractive; I can't decide between **one** and **the other**.

#### 4.6. Reflexive and reciprocal pronouns

Reflexive pronouns refer to nouns, adjectives, adverbs and pronouns that precede them in the same clause, ie **myself**, **yourself**, **itself**; whereas reciprocal pronouns refer reciprocally to other people and things, ie **one another** or **each other**.

##### 4.6.1. Reflexive pronouns

Here is a table showing the nine English reflexive pronouns.

Reflexive pronouns	
Singular	Plural
myself	ourselves
yourself	yourselves
himself	themselves
herself	
itself	
oneself	

Note that the suffix **-self** is pluralized in **-selves** for the three plural reflexive pronouns.

There are three main uses for the reflexive pronouns in English:

- as an object, when the action of a transitive verb falls on the subject itself;
- as an emphasizer;
- forming part of certain reflexive verbs.

### Reflexive pronouns as objects

The use of reflexive pronouns is obligatory when their antecedent is the subject of the sentence. They can be used as direct objects, indirect objects and prepositional objects. Examples:

- Last night I saw myself on TV.**
- Have you hurt yourself?**
- The rabbit freed itself from the trap.**
- He has bought himself a new watch.**
- We should depend on ourselves and not others.**

Exceptions: When referring back to an antecedent that is the subject, English will use an objective pronoun after a preposition if the reference could only be to that person. For example, we say **I'm taking the dog with me** (and not ~~with myself~~) because it would be impossible to take the dog with anyone other than myself. I certainly couldn't take the dog with you or with him. On the other hand, we say **I'm angry with myself** (not ~~with me~~) because it's possible for me to be angry with someone else.

In certain dialects, the reflexive pronouns are sometimes used even when not referring back to the subject; this generally occurs after the prepositions **like**, **but** and **except**, and also in compound sentences. For example, **Like myself, he married young** or **Either John or myself will help you**. However, this use should be avoided in formal contexts.

### Reflexive pronouns as emphasizers

Reflexive pronouns are also used to emphasize their antecedents. When referring to the subject, they usually come at the end of the sentence (though they can come directly after the subject) and when referring to an object, they must come directly after it. Examples:

- I'll take care of it myself.** (Less usual: **I myself will take care of it.**)
- We've picked these mushrooms ourselves.** (Less usual: **We ourselves have...**)
- In New York we saw Bob Dylan himself.**

### Reflexive pronouns forming part of reflexive verbs

Unlike in **CATALAN**, reflexive verbs are rather uncommon in English. That said, there are a few verbs for which the inclusion of the reflexive pronoun **oneself** is generally felt necessary. Here is a list of some of the most important of these verbs.

- demean oneself**
- enjoy oneself**
- ingratiate oneself (with)**
- perjure oneself**
- pride oneself (on)**

#### 4.6.2. Reciprocal pronouns

As is the case in CATALAN, reciprocal pronouns are used when two people or things are both the agents and the objects of the action of the verb. The two reciprocal pronouns in English are compound: they are **each other**, which is most often used when there are only two people or things involved, and **one another**, which is used when referring to three or more. Examples:

**Jordi and Marta love each other very much.**  
**We haven't seen each other for months.**  
**We were placed on earth to love one another.**  
**All lawyers trust one another.**

When used as prepositional objects, the preposition must go before the compound pronoun, never between the two elements. Examples:

**They are getting tired of each other.**  
**The triplets are often confused with one another.**

Note that both **each other** and **one another** can take the Saxon genitive.

**John and Mary cut each other's hair.**  
**The children were playing with one another's toys.**

#### 4.7. Translation of the CATALAN pronouns *ho*, *en* and *hi*

The translation in English of the CATALAN weak pronouns *ho*, *en* and *hi* depends on the grammatical role they play. Moreover, in nearly all contexts, the translation can be either obligatory, optional or null.

Although a complete study of these pronouns falls outside the scope of this work, we will try to touch upon the most important issues concerning these pronouns and their relationship to English.

Broadly speaking, these pronouns are used to avoid the repetition of a noun, an adjective, a syntagma, etc. They are especially frequent in conversation. For example:

–*És molt intel·ligent* –No ho és pas!  
–*Tindràs pa?* –*Sí que en* tindré.  
–*Vas mai amb pantalons curts?* –*Sí que hi* vaig sovint.

It often happens that English will use other means, especially auxiliary verbs, to express the same ideas. For example, the translation in English of the previous three uses of the CATALAN pronouns might well be “No, he isn't!”, “Yes, I will” and “Yes, I often do”.

##### 4.7.1. Translation of the CATALAN pronoun *ho*

The CATALAN weak pronoun *ho* can represent either the direct object of the sentence – eg *Qui ha portat això? Qui ho ha portat?* – or the subject complement – eg *L'un és dolent i l'altre també ho és; –Ets músic? –Sí que ho sóc.*

### **Ho as a direct object**

The pronoun *ho* can represent three kinds of direct objects: a non-specific noun, a subordinate clause or an infinitive clause.

#### **Ho representing a non-specific noun**

In the first case, *ho* is almost always translated by **it**. Examples:

*Ahir ho vaig fer.*

**I did it yesterday.**

*Dimarts ho acabarem.*

**We're going to finish it Tuesday.**

*Ho he tret d'en Toni.*

**I got it from Toni.**

#### **Ho representing a subordinate clause**

When *ho* represents a subordinate clause, it can be translated by either **it**, on the one hand, or **so** or **not**, on the other, depending on the verb. The former is by far the most frequent. Here are some examples in which *ho*, representing a subordinate clause, is translated by **it**.

*He descobert que els coneixen; ho he descobert.*

**I've learned that they know them; I've learned it.**

*Garanteixo que arribarà puntualment; ho garanteixo.*

**I guarantee he'll be on time; I guarantee it.**

*El sospitos va jurar que no havia robat res; ho va jurar.*

**The suspect swore that he hadn't stolen anything; he swore it.**

The weak pronoun *ho* can be translated by **so** (or **not** in negative statements) in the case of certain verbs that express opinions or speculations. Here is a list of some of the most important verbs of this class.

Verbs that accept <i>so</i> or <i>not</i> to represent a subordinate clause	
assume	presume
be afraid	say
believe	suppose
expect	suspect
guess	tell
hope	think
imagine	

Examples:

*Espero que se'n recordi; ho espero.*

**I hope she remembers; I hope so.**

*M'imagino que no saben què dir-li; m'ho imagino.*

**I imagine they don't know what to tell him; I imagine not.**

*Penso que això els agafarà de sorpresa; ho penso.*

**I think this is going to take them by surprise; I think so.**

*Suposo que véns per cobrar; ho suposo.*

**I suppose you've come to get paid; I suppose so.**

*Tothom diu que fracassarà; tothom ho diu.*

**Everybody says he'll fail; everybody says so.**

Finally, there are certain verbs for which English omits the object. For example, in CATALAN we say *Ja ho sé*, whereas in English it's **I know** (more usual than **I know it**). In the case of some ditransitive verbs (verbs that accept an indirect object), English converts the indirect object pronoun into a direct object, omitting the original direct object: for example, *M'ho van dir* is translated **They told me** (more usual than **They told it to me**). We can confirm that the pronoun **me** is now the direct object because the passive construction, **I was told**, is perfectly correct. The following is a list of some of the most important verbs in this class. The asterisk marks those verbs that convert a personal indirect object into a direct object.

Verbs that do not translate <i>ho</i> to represent a subordinate clause	
forget	remember
*guarantee	*show
guess	*teach
hear	*tell
imagine	understand
notice	wonder
*promise	

Examples:

*Has fet el que t'he demanat? No, ho he oblidat.*

**Have you done what I asked? No, I forgot.**

*No sabeu què tinc a les mans? Doncs endevineu-ho!*

**Don't you know what I've got in my hands? Well, guess!**

*Heu sentit que s'apujaran els preus? Sí, ho hem sentit.*

**Have you heard that prices are going up? Yes, we've heard.**

*Que no anem a la platja? Però si ens ho vas prometre!*

**We're not going to the beach? But you promised us!**

*Ens han mostrat on podem fer càmping; ens ho han mostrat.*

**They showed us where we could camp; they showed us.**

### ***Ho* representing an infinitive clause**

When the pronoun *ho* represents an infinitive clause, it is translated by **to** if the corresponding English verb accepts an infinitive as an object, and by **it** if the corresponding English verb accepts a gerund as an object. What's more, depending on the verb, this translation can be either required or optional.

Here is a list of English verbs that accept an infinitive as an object and use the particle **to** to substitute for it. An asterisk marks those verbs for which the presence of **to** is required.

Verbs that accept infinitives as an object	
ask	*need
decide	pretend
*expect	promise
*hope	*want
manage	

Examples:

*Ha demanat de venir amb nosaltres; ho ha demanat.*

**He's asked to come with us; he's asked (to).**

*Espero acabar la feina avui; ho espero.*

**I expect/hope to finish the work today; I expect/hope to.**

*Fingien de treballar; ho fingien.*

**They were pretending to work; they were pretending (to).**

*Volem treballar de nit. Nosaltres també ho volem.*

**We want to work at night. We also want to.**

Here is a list of English verbs that accept a gerund as an object and use the pronoun **it** to substitute for it. An asterisk marks those verbs for which the presence of **it** is required. Note that the verb **quit** is an exception.

Verbs that accept gerunds as an object	
*admit	*deny
*avoid	*miss
*can't stand	practice
confess	quit [ <i>ho</i> not translated]
*consider	*regret

Examples:

*Evitem conduir de nit; ho evitem.*

**We avoid driving at night; we avoid it.**

*No puc suportar de fer cua; no ho puc suportar.*

**I can't stand queuing; I can't stand it.**

*Va negar haver vist res d'estrany; ho va negar.*

**He denied seeing anything strange; he denied it.**

*Va deixar de fumar; va deixar de fer-ho.*

**He quit smoking; he quit.**

### ***Ho* as a subject complement**

Broadly speaking, when used as a subject complement, the weak pronoun *ho* is only translated into English when it refers to an adjective or a non-specific noun. The copulative verbs used before subject complements are **be** (*ser*, *estar*), **seem**, **appear** and **look** (*semblar*,

*aparentar, parèixer*). The translation of the pronoun *ho* depends on both the verb itself and the part of speech represented by *ho*; the following table shows this relationship (null means it is not translated; **look** cannot take a noun complement).

Translation of <i>ho</i> when representing a subject complement			
Part of speech	<i>Be</i>	<i>Seem, appear</i>	<i>Look</i>
Adjective	-/so	so	-
Noun	-	so	

Examples:

*La Lúdia és alta i la seva germana encara ho és més.*

**Lidia is tall and her sister is even more so.**

*És canadenc, però la seva mare no ho és.*

**He's a Canadian but his mother isn't.**

*Sembla una bona idea; sí que ho sembla.*

**It seems (to be) a good idea; yes, it seems so.**

*Aquestes dues línies semblen paral·leles. A mi no m'ho semblen pas.*

**Those two lines appear/seem (to be) parallel. They don't appear/seem so to me.**

*Ell sembla cansat, però ella no ho sembla gens.*

**He looks tired but she doesn't at all.**

Finally, the CATALAN construction noun + *també ho* + verb is translated in English by the expression **so** + auxiliary + noun. Examples:

*La Laura sembla cansada i la Marta també ho sembla.*

**Laura seems/appears/looks tired and so does Marta.**

*L'un és dolent i l'altre també ho és.*

**One is bad and so is the other.**

#### 4.7.2. Translation of the CATALAN pronoun *en*

The CATALAN weak pronoun *en* can represent either the direct object of the sentence – eg *Us agrada el vi? Doncs beveu-ne!*, a prepositional object – eg *En tinc cura (d'una àvia)*, a noun complement – eg *Dels nostres amics, cal apreciar-ne les qualitats*, or an adverbial complement – eg *En vénen ara, del jardí*. We will therefore divide this chapter into four sections, corresponding to these four uses.

##### *En* as a direct object

Broadly speaking, the translation in English of the weak pronoun *en* representing the direct object depends on whether it is accompanied by an adjective. In this case it is usually not translated, though it can be translated **of it**, for non-count nouns, or **of them** for count nouns. Examples:

*–Tenim tomàquets? –Sí, en tenim tres.*

**“Do we have any tomatoes?” “Yes, we have three (of them).”**

*–Voleu bitllets? –Sí, compra'n tres.*

**“Do you want tickets?” “Yes, buy three (of them).”**

*No en vull gaires. No en volia gaire.*

**I don't want many (of them). I didn't want much (of it).**

*Si no t'agraden aquests mocadors, tria'n uns altres.*

**If you don't like these handkerchiefs, choose some others.**

When the weak pronoun *en*, representing the direct object, is not accompanied by an adjective, it is usually translated **some**. Examples:

*Tens pomes? Doncs, porta-me'n.*

**Do you have (any) apples? Then bring me some.**

*El vi era molt bo i per això n'he begut.*

**The wine was really good and so I drank some.**

A special case is the CATALAN construction *en* + verb + *de* + adjective. Examples:

*Camises? En tenim de molt maques.*

**Shirts? We have some really pretty ones.**

*Trobaràs capsas petites i també en trobaràs de grosses.*

**You'll find (some) little boxes and you'll also find (some) big ones.**

*Val més que en compres un de nou.*

**You'd better buy a new one.**

### ***En* as a prepositional object**

The most important use of the pronoun *en* as a prepositional object is accompanying those verbs that require the preposition *de* before the complement, verbs such as *queixar-se* and *enamorar-se*. For example, *Es va queixar de la calor*; *se'n va queixar* and *M'enamoro d'ella*; *me n'enamoro*. These expressions are usually translated in English by the combination preposition + pronoun, which is logical if we consider that the meaning of *en* in these cases is *d'això* and *d'ella*, respectively. Hence: **He complained about the heat; he complained about it** and **I'm falling in love with her; I'm falling in love with her**. Note that in the second example, the two sentences are the same. Note too that there is often a discrepancy between the CATALAN and English prepositions (eg *enamorar-se de* = **fall in love with**).

Here are some examples in which the pronoun *en* can be translated in English by the combination preposition + pronoun.

*Parlem-ne.*

**Let's talk about it.**

*És molt innocent, aquest noi; sempre se'n riuen.*

**That boy is really naïve; they're always laughing at him.**

*Al principi m'agradava aquesta cervesa, però ara me n'he cansat.*

**At first I liked this beer, but now I've got tired of it.**

*És un cap de pardals; no te'n pots fiar.*

**He's a scatterbrain; you can't rely on him.**

We should mention too that there is another group of CATALAN verbs that require *de* before their complements, and that are translated in English by transitive verbs. In these cases, *en* is translated simply by a pronoun. Examples:



*L'Imma és una mica perillosa; no te'n fiïs.*  
**Imma is a little dangerous; don't trust her.**  
*Parlava sense pensar i ara me'n penedeixo.*  
**I spoke without thinking and now I regret it.**

### **En as a noun complement**

When the pronoun *en* is used as a noun complement, it generally refers to an element pertaining to another. As such, it is usually translated in English by some kind of possessive. Examples:

*Hem d'analitzar l'afer i esbrinar-ne les conseqüències.*  
**We have to analyse the affair and discover its consequences.**  
*No hauríem de criticar massa els nostres amics; cal apreciar-ne les qualitats.*  
**We shouldn't criticize our friends too severely; we need to appreciate their good qualities.**

### **En as an adverbial complement**

When the pronoun *en* refers to an adverb complement, it is usually one of origin; it can be translated by the expression **from** + place or simply be omitted.

*No vénen de Mollerussa, aquestes cireres? Sí que en vénen.*  
**Don't those cherries come from Mollerussa? Yes, they come from there.**  
*Quan nosaltres entrem a classe, ells en surten.*  
**When we go into class, they're coming out.**

## **4.7.3. Translation of the CATALAN pronoun *hi***

The two most important uses of the CATALAN weak pronoun *hi* are as a prepositional object, eg *No hi pensis més*, and as a place adverb, eg *Hi vaig (allà) cada dia*.

### ***Hi* as a prepositional object**

The most important use of the pronoun *hi* as a prepositional object is accompanying those verbs that use a preposition other than *de* before the complement, verbs such as *acostumar-se* and *somiar*. For example, *No li agrada la calor però s'hi acostumarà* and *Estic obsessionat amb el tema i fins i tot hi somio*. These expressions are usually translated in English by the combination preposition + pronoun, which is logical if we consider that the meaning of *hi* in these cases is *a la calor* and *amb el tema*, respectively. Hence: **He doesn't like the heat but he'll get used to it** and **I'm obsessed with the subject and I even dream about it**. Note that there is often a discrepancy between the CATALAN and English prepositions (eg *somiar amb* = **dream about**).

Here are some examples in which the pronoun *hi* can be translated in English by the combination preposition + pronoun.

*És un projecte dubtós; no t'hi fiquis.*  
**It's a dubious; don't get involved (in it).**  
*Penses massa en els teus problemes; no hi pensis tant.*  
**You think too much about your problems; don't think about them so much.**  
*La Maria? No hi comptis pas!*  
**Maria? Don't count on her!**

We should mention too that there is another group of CATALAN verbs that require prepositions other than *de* before their complements, which are translated in English by transitive verbs. In these cases, *hi* is translated simply by a pronoun. Examples:

*No estic d'acord amb la proposta i m'hi oposaré.*

**I don't agree with the proposal and I'm going to oppose it.**

*–Vols jugar a escacs? –D'acord, però no hi he jugat mai.*

**“Would you like to play chess?” “OK, but I've never played it before.”**

*Aquell gos és perillós, no t'hi acostis.*

**That dog is dangerous. Don't approach it.**

*És molt bonica i m'hi vull casar.*

**She's very beautiful and I want to marry her.**

### ***Hi* as a place adverb**

*Hi* is often used to represent 'there' when referring to place. It is sometimes not required when translated into English. For example:

*Anem-hi.*

**Let's go (there).**

*N'hi tenen alguns.*

**They have some (there).**

## **5. Verbs**

Verbs describe an action, state of being or event. There are two versions of the basic verb form in English: the full and bare infinitive – ie with or without **to**. Verbs have different tenses to reflect different points in time or conditions. The following section details these and other points that need to be taken into account when using verbs in English.

### **5.1. Verb tenses**

In English there are eight indicative verb tenses and two subjunctive ones, as can be seen in the following table.

Indicative tenses	
simple present	present perfect
present continuous	present perfect continuous
simple past	past perfect
past continuous	past perfect continuous

  

Subjunctive tenses	
present subjunctive	past subjunctive

Note that English does not really have a future or conditional tense as such. Although some authorities have cited the compound forms **will** + bare infinitive and **would** + bare infinitive as the future and conditional tenses, respectively, this denomination is unsatisfactory because, on the one hand, the future in English is more often expressed using expressions other than the **will** form (see section Sy 5.1.6.) and, on the other, the **would** form is also used in non-conditional contexts.

### 5.1.1. Simple present and present continuous

#### Simple present

The simple present tense is formed using the bare infinitive for all persons except the third person singular, which must use the -s form (this is, in fact, the only use made of this form). The simple present is used in the following cases:

To express habitual or repetitive actions.

**I work in Girona.**

**Jon smokes too much.**

**In our house the men wash the dishes.**

To express general truths.

**Mice fear cats.**

**Beginnings are difficult.**

**The universe forms a harmonic whole.**

To describe mental states and emotions.

**We agree.**

**Ramona knows the answer.**

**I want to tell you something.**

With copulative verbs.

**He's French.**

**She looks tired.**

In zero conditional and first conditional expressions (see also Sy 5.1.7.).

**If you heat water, it boils.**

**If you call me this evening, I'll give you his number.**

The simple present tense is also frequently used to translate the CATALAN subjunctive.

#### Present continuous

The present continuous is formed using the present conjugation of **be** (**am**, **is** or **are**) plus the gerund. It is commonly used in the following cases:

To express an action that is happening at the present moment.

**She's changing her clothes.**

**They're playing our song.**

**The children are jumping on the bed.**

To express an action that is progressing over a relatively long period of time.

**He's studying to be an engineer.**  
**What are you working on now?**

To express future arrangements (see also Sy 5.1.6.).

**This summer we're travelling to Italy.**  
**I'm having dinner with Griselda tonight.**

With the adverb **always**, when referring to repeated actions in the past that will probably continue into the future. In this case there is always an element of exaggeration, expressing annoyance, praise, love, etc.

**They're always complaining.**  
**She's always helping someone.**  
**I'm always thinking of you, dear.**

The present continuous is also used to distinguish habitual actions that have a limited time span from those with an indefinite time span.

**He's living in Vic these days.** (He is living there temporarily.)  
**Pau and Sílvia live in Vic.** (Vic is their home.)  
**She's writing some articles for *Regió7*.** (She is, for example, a freelance writer.)  
**She writes articles for *Regió7*.** (This is her permanent job.)

### 5.1.2. Simple past and past continuous

#### Simple past

For regular verbs, the simple past tense is formed by adding the **-ed** suffix to the bare infinitive; for irregular verbs, it is the second of the verb's three forms.

The simple past is used to describe completed actions in both the remote and near past.

**I saw her two months ago; I saw her two hours ago.**  
**They were there for three days.**  
**During the movie, I had to change my seat twice.**  
**I got off work and then walked home.**  
**I waited for them for an hour.**

In AmE, the simple past is also used to describe actions that have just occurred (in BrE the use of present perfect is more usual).

**He just left.**  
**I just saw her.**

The simple past tense is also frequently used to translate the CATALAN subjunctive.

#### Past continuous

The past continuous is formed using the past conjugation of **be** (**was** or **were**) plus the gerund. It is commonly used to describe continuous past action. As is the case with the imperfect tense in CATALAN, neither the beginning nor the end of the action is referred to. Examples:

**I was taking a shower when the phone rang.**  
**While I was watching TV, my wife was studying.**  
**Last night at this time I was sleeping.**

As is the case with the present continuous (see section Sy 5.1.1.), the past continuous can be used along with the adverb **always** to express annoyance, praise, love, etc. Examples:

**He was always calling at the oddest hours.**

**They were always asking if they could bring us anything from their farm.**

### 5.1.3. Present perfect and present perfect continuous

#### Present perfect

The present perfect tense is formed using the present conjugation of the verb **have** (**have** or **has**) as an auxiliary and adding the participle. It is commonly used in the following cases:

To refer to unspecific actions concluded in the past. Note that in these cases it is not possible to use a specific time reference, such as **yesterday**, **ago**, **at two o'clock**, etc. You can, however, use such unspecific time references as **ever**, **always**, **yet**, **so far**, etc. Examples:

**I have lived in Paris.**

**Have you read any Harry Potter books?**

**We still haven't had breakfast.**

**It's the best wine I've ever had.**

**There have been a lot of changes.**

**We haven't done anything so far.**

**She has always lived in Gósol.**

To refer to actions that have just finished happening; in these cases the adverb **just** is added. (In AmE, the simple past is often used in this context.) Examples:

**He has just left.**

**I have just seen her.**

To refer to actions that began in the past and continue into the present. Note that CATALAN uses the present tense to describe such actions. Note too that in many cases, the use of present perfect or present perfect continuous is optional. The difference is that with the present perfect we focus our attention more on the result of the action and with the present perfect continuous we focus more on the progression of the action. Examples:

**I have had the flu for six days.**

**We've been here for an hour.**

**Ever since I've lived here, I've been running (or I've run) two hours a day.**

**Ever since the weather changed, I've been cold.**

To refer to past actions that have some relevance in the present. Examples:

**I've bought some cheese and I want you to try it.**

**They have worked a lot and so they are tired.**

**She has bought herself a new car.**

#### Present perfect continuous

The present perfect continuous is formed using the present conjugation of the verb **have** (**have** or **has**) plus the participle **been** and a gerund. It is used in the following cases:

To talk about actions that began in the past and continue into the present (in which case CATALAN uses the present tense). Examples:

**We've been working since two o'clock.**  
**They've been travelling in Africa for eight years.**  
**They've been going together ever since they were in high school.**

To refer to continuous actions that have recently finished and have some relevance to the present. Examples:

**I'm tired because I've been studying.**  
**You've been eating garlic, haven't you?**  
**I've been reading your novel and I find it fascinating!**

#### 5.1.4. Past perfect and past perfect continuous

##### Past perfect

The past perfect tense is formed using the past tense of the verb **have (had)** as an auxiliary and adding a participle. Its only use is to indicate that an action or a state in the past ended before some other finished action occurred, such as in the case of reported speech. It corresponds to the *pretèrit plusquamperfet* in CATALAN. Examples:

**I reminded him that he hadn't washed the dishes yet.**  
**They didn't think they had been treated fairly.**

The past perfect tense is also frequently used to translate the CATALAN subjunctive. For example, *dubtava que haguessin acabat* = **I doubted that they had finished.**

##### Past perfect continuous

The past perfect continuous is formed using the past tense of the verb **have (had)** as an auxiliary plus the participle **been** and a gerund. It is used to describe continuous actions in the past that were happening until some other finished action occurred. Examples:

**We'd been working three hours when the bell sounded.**  
**They'd been travelling in Africa for eight years when we met them.**  
**They told me they'd been going together ever since they were in high school.**

#### 5.1.5. Present and past subjunctive

##### Present subjunctive

The present subjunctive form is always the same as the bare infinitive. Therefore, it only differs from the simple present for the verb **be** (eg **I be, you be, he be**, etc.) and for the third person singular (eg **he go, she do, it occur**, etc.). It is generally used in subordinate clauses following adjectives that express what is important or desirable, or following verbs that express orders, requests, suggestions and other similar ideas. Examples:

**It's essential that they be there on time.**  
**I insisted that he resign.**

When the subordinate clause is headed by an adjective, in informal contexts the use of the subjunctive can be optional. Example:

**It's important that he keeps (or keep) us informed.**

What's more, in BrE, the combination **should** + bare infinitive is often used.

**It's necessary that the nurse should be present.**

(Or: **It's necessary that the nurse [be or is] present.**)

The verbs most often used with the subjunctive are **demand**, **insist**, **propose**, **recommend** and **suggest**. These verbs almost always take either the subjunctive or the **should** form, though an indicative tense is sometimes seen, especially in BrE. Examples:

**They demanded that he (should) do something to help them.**

**We proposed that he (should) be named king.**

**He recommended/suggested that we (should) be ready by seven.**

Other verbs that can also head a subordinate clause in the subjunctive are **ask** (when it means **request**, not when it means **inquire**), **order**, **request** and **urge**. However, with these verbs there is an alternate construction that is more common: verb + noun/pronoun + **full** infinitive. Examples:

**She asked/ordered/requested/urged them to come.**

(Or: **She asked/ordered/requested/urged that they [should] come.**)

The present subjunctive is also used in certain idioms that express desire or hope. Examples:

**Let there be light!**

**Long live the King!**

**God bless you.**

**May all your Christmases be white.**

Other such expressions include **if need be** (*si cal*), **far be it from me** (*Déu me'n guard de*), **lest** (*per tal que no, per si*) and **suffice it to say** (*n'hi ha prou que diguem*).

### Past subjunctive

The past subjunctive form in English coincides with the simple past form, and thus is only noticeable in the case of the verb **be**, when the simple past plural form can always be used (eg **If I were a rich man**). The sense is always hypothetical or unreal. In modern English, the use of **were** is becoming less stringent. In other words, use of **I wish he was here** (*Tant de bo que fos aquí*), rather than **I wish he were here** is becoming increasingly common, despite the recommendations of some style guides to the contrary. More examples:

**He looked as if he were/was fifteen or sixteen.**

**I wish it were/was sunnier.**

**Even if his statement were/was true, my opinion wouldn't change.**

**I live each day as if it were/was my last.**

### 5.1.6. Future

As was mentioned in section Sy 5.1., there is no future tense in English, as such. The two principal forms used to express the future are the **will** form (**will** + bare infinitive; in BrE, **shall** can sometimes be used instead of **will**, though it is never obligatory) and the **be going to** form (**am/are/is** + **going to** + bare infinitive). What's more, in certain contexts, English often uses the present continuous tense to express the future. Finally, the construction **be** + full infinitive is used when referring to formal or official plans and for giving orders in a very formal way, and the simple present is used when referring to events scheduled in the future.

We should mention too that there are three compound future forms: the future continuous (**I will be doing** or **I'm going to be doing**), the future perfect (**I will have done** or **I'm going to be doing**) and the future perfect continuous (**I will have been doing** or **I'm going to have been doing**).

The use of one or another of the various future forms in English depends on the kind of future that is being expressed: ie, whether it is a prediction, intention, decision, promise or request. The emotional state of the speaker can also play a part.

### Future: prediction

Predictions are most often expressed in English using the **will** form or the **be going to** form. The most important difference between these two forms is that we use the **be going to** form when we have some evidence in the present for what will happen in the future, or when we consider some future event to be likely. On the other hand, we use the **will** form when the prediction is not based on anything specific, or when it is conditional or hypothetical (eg **If this is, then that will be**). Note that expressions beginning with the adverbs **maybe** and **perhaps** almost always use the **will** form, because they indicate uncertainty. Finally, there are many predictions that can be perfectly well expressed using either form, though the **be going to** form implies more certainty on the part of the speaker.

### Predictions using the *be going to* form

**She's going to have a baby.** (not ~~She will have a baby.~~)

**Look at those black clouds! I think it's going to rain.** (not ~~I think it will rain.~~)

Here we might note that when the prediction is further off in the future, there is little difference between, for example, **I think it will snow next week** and **I think it's going to snow next week**. The latter expresses more certainty, but both are perfectly correct.

**Be careful! You're going to fall!** (more usual than **You'll fall!**)

**Hold still; this is going to hurt a little.** (more usual than **This will hurt a little.**)

**What a traffic jam! We're going to be late.** (more usual than **We will be late.**)

### Predictions using the *will* form

**We'll get there too early if we leave now.** (more usual than **We're going to.**)

**Someday they'll find a cure for cancer.** (more usual than **they're going to.**)

**Maybe he'll forget all about it.** (more usual than **he's going to.**)

**Even if you run you'll miss the train.** (more usual than **you're going to.**)

**Unless you live abroad, the new law won't affect you.** (more usual than **isn't going to.**)

Here is an example showing the difference between **will** and **be going to** in a specific case.

A) **Don't shout so loud! They'll kick you out.**

B) **You've been too noisy and now they're going to kick you out.**

In example A), we use the **will** form because the prediction is based on a condition, that of shouting too loud. In example B), we use the **be going to** form because the condition has been fulfilled and it now seems certain that the noisy person will be kicked out.

### Predictions that can use either form indifferently

Remember that, for these examples, the **be going to** form expresses more certainty; the speaker considers the prediction more likely to occur.



I think he will/is going to win the election.  
I guess it will/is going to take a while.  
This new song will be/is going to be very popular.  
The bus will/is going to be here soon.

### Future: intention

Intentions are most often expressed in English using the **be going to** form. Examples:

When are you going to write to your mother?  
I'm going to ask my boss for a transfer.  
I'm going to quit (or give up) eating meat.  
I'm going to be a doctor when I grow up.  
They're going to show us how to do it.  
We've bought this camera and now we're going to take pictures.

That said, it should be mentioned that intentions modified by either conditions or time clauses (clauses headed by conjunctions such as **when**, **until**, **after**, etc.) most often use the **will** form. Examples:

If I have time, I'll do it.  
We'll tell him about it when he comes.

Note that, in the second example, the conditionality is expressed in CATALAN by the use of the subjunctive (*Li ho direm quan vingui*). Examples:

We'll leave as soon as they call us.  
We won't know until they tell us.  
He'll give a reward to the person that finds his watch.

Finally, we should mention that the **be going to** form can be used with time clauses when the outcome seems certain. Compare:

The princess will marry the knight who kills the dragon (conditional, because we don't know whether someone will actually manage to kill it).  
The princess is going to marry the knight who wins the tournament (not conditional because there will certainly be a winner of the tournament).

### Future: decision

#### Examples of decisions using the present continuous

When referring to a decision to do something that was made in the past but that has not yet occurred, English often uses the present continuous. Another way of looking at it is to say that the present continuous is used to refer to those kinds of activities that one might write down in an agenda: definite appointments, arrangements to meet, special activities, etc. Examples:

They're closing the Girona highway tomorrow.  
We're leaving Thursday.  
They're getting married in July.

As far as the difference between the present continuous and the **be going to** form (see above) is concerned, the latter is a bit vaguer; it generally refers more often to an intention on the part of the speaker, without the same degree of certainty that the action will take place. Compare the following examples:

**I'm going to take Marta out to dinner next week.**

This is my intention, though I may not be sure yet which night we'll both be free.

**I'm taking Marta out to dinner next Friday.**

We have a definite date set.

**We're going to stay here tonight.**

This is our intention. However, we might not be able to find a room.

**We're staying here tonight.**

We have booked our room.

**This year we're going to have the house painted.**

This is our intention, but we haven't hired the painters yet.

**Next week we're having the house painted.**

We have hired the painters and settled on a date to begin the work.

### Examples of spontaneous decisions using the *will* form

In contrast to decisions made in the past that haven't yet occurred – for which we normally use the **be going to** form – English always uses the **will** form when the decision is spontaneous: that is, when it is made on the spur of the moment, without forethought. This decision is often the consequence of what someone else has said. Examples:

**"I have a fever." "OK, I'll get you an aspirin."**

**"We'd like to see some yellow trousers, please." "All right, come with me and I'll show you what we have."**

**"I don't have time to go shopping." "No problem, I'll go."**

**Wait, I'll help you.**

**I think I'll stop now; I'm feeling tired.**

### Use of the *be* + full infinitive construction

The **be** + full infinitive construction is used when referring to formal or official plans and for giving very formal orders. The negative is formed **be** + **not** + full infinitive. Examples:

**The president is to travel to Andalusia this week.**

**They are not to leave without my permission.**

### Promises, requests and strong emotions

English normally uses the **will** form to express promises and requests, whereas it is more usual to use the **be going to** form when expressing such strong emotions as hope, anger, love, etc. Examples:

**I'll do whatever is necessary.**

**I promise I'll never be unfaithful.**

**Will you help me open these jars, please?**

**Barcelona is going to win the league!**

**If the service doesn't improve, I'm going to complain!**

**I'm really going to miss you.**

### Compound future constructions

There are three compound future constructions in English, the most important of which is the future continuous, formed **will be** + gerund or **am/are/is going to be** + gerund. There is generally no difference in meaning between these two forms, though the first is rather more usual. The other two compound future constructions are the future perfect, formed **will have** + participle, and the future perfect continuous, formed **will have been** + gerund.

### Examples of the future continuous

The most important use of the future continuous is expressing actions in the future that will be happening “as usual” or “in the normal course of events”. Consider the following example:

(Pilot to passengers): **“We’ll be flying at an altitude of thirty thousand feet.”**

In this case, none of the other future forms we’ve studied would be adequate: the **will** form would be incorrect because this is neither a prediction nor a spontaneous decision, and the **be going to** form would sound unusual to passengers, implying that the flight plan was a mere intention.

This form is also a polite way of asking about someone’s plans or cancelling a previous commitment. Examples:

**Will you be coming to the party Thursday?**  
**I’m afraid I won’t be coming to your party.**

It is also a polite way of expressing what we feel to be likely.

**You’ll be feeling tired after all that walking.**

Finally, the future continuous is used to emphasize the continuous nature of actions that will be taking place in the future.

**This time tomorrow, we’ll be driving to France.**  
**We’ll be waiting for you at the station when you get to Ripoll.**

### Future perfect and the future perfect continuous

As is the case in CATALAN, the future perfect is used to refer to states or actions that will be finished at some time in the future. The future perfect continuous refers to continuous actions occurring between now and some time in the future that may be unfinished. Examples:

**Next week we will have been married ten years.**  
**When they get here, we will have already left.**  
**At six I’ll have been waiting here two hours!**  
**By Christmas I’ll have been working here for twenty years.**

#### 5.1.7. Conditional

The first thing to keep in mind is the difference between conditional clauses and the conditional verb form. The latter is constructed **would** + bare infinitive (what we will refer to as the **would** form) and can nearly always be used to translate the CATALAN conditional tense. Examples:

**I would do it.**  
**I knew they wouldn’t help us.**  
**Would you please step back?**

Conditional sentences, on the other hand, express hypothetical situations and their consequences. They are sometimes referred to as **if** sentences, because they always include the conjunction **if**, and are traditionally referred to as the zero, first, second and third conditionals. The following table clearly shows the construction of these four conditional expressions in English.

Type	If clause	Result clause
Zero	simple present	simple present/imperative
First	simple present	<b>will</b> form
Second	simple past	<b>would, could, should, might</b> forms
Third	past perfect	<b>would/could have</b> + participle
		<b>would</b> form

In the following four sections we will give an explanation and examples of these conditional clauses. Note that in every case the verb tenses correspond exactly to their CATALAN counterparts.

### Zero conditional

The zero conditional is most often used to talk about certainties, universal truths, scientific facts, etc. It is unique among the conditionals in that **if** can be replaced with **when** or **whenever** without changing the meaning of the sentence (except in the case of the imperative).

**If (When) you heat water to 100 degrees, it boils.**

**If (When) you eat lots of salted peanuts, you get thirsty.**

**If you get lost, phone us.**

### First conditional

The **if** clause in the first conditional, normally in the simple present tense, is used to refer to a present or future situation, and the result clause, usually using the **will** form, states its possible (or probable) result. Examples:

**If you help us, we'll help you.**

**If it snows this afternoon, they'll call off the match.**

**If you don't finish this evening, you'll have to work on it tomorrow.**

**Nobody will say anything if you make a mistake.**

**What will you do if she isn't elected?**

### Second conditional

The **if** clause in the second conditional is used to refer to an unreal event or state in the present, generally expressed in the simple past. The result clause, which usually uses the **would** form but which can also use the **could** and **might** forms, refers to what could have been the consequence of the **if** clause had it been true. Examples:

**If I were (or was) a woman, I'd tell you to get lost.**

**If we had more money, we could buy a better car.**

**If you left now, you still might catch your train.**

**I wouldn't do that, if I were (or was) you.**

### Third conditional

The **if** clause of the third conditional is used to refer to something that was unreal in the past and is generally expressed using the past perfect. There are two possible result clauses: the first refers to an unreal situation in the past that could have been the result had the **if** clause been true and is expressed using the expression **would/could have** + participle. The second refers to an unreal situation in the present that could have been the result had the **if** clause been true and is expressed using the **would** form.

Result clause expressing an unreal situation in the past:

**If you had told me, I would have done something.**  
**If we had had more time, we could have had dinner together.**  
**If I had wanted a fast car, I wouldn't have bought this one.**

Result clause expressing an unreal situation in the present:

**If you hadn't drunk so much, you wouldn't be feeling sick.**  
**If we'd left on time, we'd already be there.**

## 5.2. Non-affirmative constructions

### Negative constructions

Negative expressions in English are formed by adding the adverb **not** after the auxiliary verb. Examples (the contracted forms, where possible, are included in parentheses):

Present continuous

**I am reading the paper – I am not reading the paper.**

Past continuous

**He was driving too fast – He was not (wasn't) driving too fast.**

Present perfect

**I have already had breakfast – I have not (haven't) had breakfast yet.**

Present perfect continuous

**They have been running – They have not (haven't) been running.**

Past perfect

**He said he had done it – He said he had not (hadn't) done it.**

Past perfect continuous

**I realized she had been wearing shoes – I realized she had not (hadn't) been wearing shoes.**

In the case of the simple present and simple past tenses, the auxiliaries **do** or **does** (simple present) and **did** (simple past) must be placed after the subject; in both cases, the original verb then takes on the bare infinitive form. However, an important exception is that the auxiliaries **do**, **does** and **did** are never used with the verb **be**.

Simple present

**They live in Torà – They do not (don't) live in Torà.**  
**He works in Sabadell – He does not (doesn't) work in Sabadell.**  
**You are funny – You are not (aren't) funny.**

Simple past

**We saw them – We did not (didn't) see them.**  
**He was angry – He was not (wasn't) angry.**

Remember too that the modal auxiliaries, which we will study in section Sy 5.7., do not require the use of **do**, **does** or **did**. Examples:

**We can make the fire – We cannot (can't) make the fire.**

**I will help you tomorrow – I will not (won't) help you tomorrow.**

**You should see her again – You should not (shouldn't) see her again.**

### Affirmative yes-no questions

Affirmative **yes-no** questions in English are formed by inverting the subject and the auxiliary verb.

Present continuous

**You are reading the paper. – Are you reading the paper?**

Past continuous

**He was driving too fast. – Was he driving too fast?**

Present perfect

**They have already had breakfast. – Have they had breakfast yet?**

Present perfect continuous

**They have been running. – Have they been running?**

Past perfect

**He had done it. – Had he done it?**

Past perfect continuous

**She had been wearing shoes. – Had she been wearing shoes?**

Simple present

**They live in Torà. – Do they live in Torà?**

**He works in Sabadell. – Does he work in Sabadell?**

**You are sleepy. – Are you sleepy?**

Simple past

**We saw them. – Did we see them?**

**He was angry. – Was he angry?**

### Negative yes-no questions

Negative **yes-no** questions in English are formed in two ways. The first, which is used mostly in written English, is constructed auxiliary + subject + **not** + verb. The second form, used mostly in oral English, is constructed contraction of the auxiliary and **not** + subject + verb. (See section Sp 2.1. for a list of the possible contractions.)

Present continuous

**Are you not reading the paper? or Aren't you reading the paper?**

Past continuous

**Was he not driving too fast? or Wasn't he driving too fast?**

Present perfect

**Have they not had breakfast yet? or Haven't they had breakfast yet?**

Present perfect continuous

**Have they not been running? or Haven't they been running?**

Past perfect

**Had he not done it? or Hadn't he done it?**

Past Perfect Continuous

**Had she not been wearing shoes? or Hadn't she been wearing shoes?**

Simple present

**Do they not live in Torà? or Don't they live in Torà?**

**Does he not work in Sabadell? or Doesn't he work in Sabadell?**

**Are you not sleepy? or Aren't you sleepy?**

Simple past

**Did we not see them? or Didn't we see them?**

**Was he not angry? or Wasn't he angry?**

Remember too that the modal auxiliaries, which we will study in section Sy 5.7., do not require the use of **do**, **does** or **did**. Examples:

**Can we not make the fire? or Can't we make the fire?**

**Will he not help you tomorrow? or Won't he help you tomorrow?**

**Should you not see her again? or Shouldn't you see her again?**

Remember that, as elsewhere, in negative questions, the contraction of **am** and **not** is not possible. Therefore, in informal English, the form **aren't I** is used. Examples:

**Am I not your husband? or Aren't I your husband?**

**Am I not coming too? or Aren't I coming too?**

### 5.3. Question tags and short answers

English allows for the forming of certain questions in a shortened format. The following section looks at two ways this is possible and how they are used.

#### 5.3.1. Question tags

Question tags are used in English to question or confirm a statement, turning the overall statement into a question. If the statement is affirmative, then the question tag will consist of the first two words of a negative question (translated in CATALAN, *oi que sí?*); if the statement is negative, the question tag will consist of the first two words of an affirmative question (translated in CATALAN, *oi que no?*). Note that the first half of the statement is never in the form of a question. Examples:

**You know each other, don't you?**

(This is the same as saying: **You know each other. Don't you know each other?**)

**The train hasn't left yet, has it?**

(This is the same as saying: **The train hasn't left yet. Has it left yet?**)

**They are sleeping, aren't they?**

**You can come tomorrow, can't you?**  
**They won't see me, will they?**  
**It's dangerous, isn't it? or It isn't dangerous, is it?**

### 5.3.2. Short answers

In English, when a short answer to a question is given, it usually takes the form **yes**, + pronoun + auxiliary, or **no**, + pronoun + negative contraction. Examples:

**Are you tired? Yes I am or No, I'm not.**  
**Has she been dancing? Yes, she has or No, she hasn't.**  
**Haven't they finished? No, they haven't or Yes, they have.**  
**Can't they give you some help? No, they can't or Yes, they can.**

### 5.4. Use of interrogative adverbs

The interrogative adverbs in English are **where**, **when**, **why** and **how**. The first three correspond to the CATALAN adverbs *on*, *quan* and *per què*, respectively, and the fourth always corresponds to the CATALAN *com* when this means *de quina manera*.

As is the case in CATALAN, the interrogative adverbs are placed at the head of the sentence. Examples:

**Where are my bags?**  
**When is the party?**  
**Why didn't you stop?**  
**How do you feel?**

Keep in mind that when these adverbs are used in indirect questions, the inversion doesn't take place. Examples:

**I don't know where they've gone.**  
**I don't remember when the party is.**  
**Do you know why he is angry?**

### 5.5. Use of interrogative pronouns and adjectives

There are three interrogative pronouns in English: **who** and **whom** (*qui*), and **what** (*què*). The three interrogative adjectives, **which** and **what** (*quin -a*), and **whose** (*de qui*), can also be used as pronouns if the noun they modify is understood. Note that **what** can be used as both a pronoun meaning *què* and an adjective meaning *quin -a*.

#### Interrogative pronouns as subjects or objects

When an interrogative pronoun (or a noun modified by an interrogative adjective) is the subject of the sentence, there is a syntax change: the pronoun is followed directly by the verb and there is no inversion. Compare the following two sentences.

**Who** as object:

**Who do you love?** (you is the subject, **who** is the direct object).

**Who** as subject:

**Who loves you?** (**who** is the subject, you is the direct object).



Examples:

**Who did the tourists follow?**

**Who followed the tourists?**

**Who have they seen?**

**Who has seen them?**

**What caused the gas leak?** (What was the cause of the leak?)

**What did the gas leak cause?** (What were the consequences of the gas leak?)

**Which jacket do you want?**

**Which key opens this door?**

### Interrogative pronouns as prepositional objects

Two constructions are used when an interrogative pronoun is a prepositional object. The first, which is far less frequent, is preposition + **whom** + auxiliary + subject + verb. The second, which we will use exclusively from now on, is **who** + auxiliary + subject [+ complements] + verb + preposition. Compare the following two examples.

Very formal: **With whom did you go there?**

More usual: **Who did you go there with?**

Examples:

**Who are they talking about?**

**Who did you buy the mushrooms from?**

**What does it depend on?**

It is good to keep in mind that English never translates the CATALAN preposition *a* when it comes before a direct object, but it must always be translated when it comes before an indirect object. Compare the following.

*Qui ajuden?*

**Who do they help?** (The preposition is not translated because it comes before the direct object.)

*A qui envien cartes?*

**Who do they send letters to?** (The preposition is translated because it comes before the indirect object.)

### The difference between the adjectives *which* and *what*

Both **which** and **what** can be used as adjectives when referring to a particular one or ones. The difference is that **which** implies a limited choice – that is, the speaker feels they have a good idea of what the possibilities are, whereas **what** is used for unlimited, unknown possibilities. Compare the following:

**What time is it?** (unlimited possibilities)

**The movie shows at 7:30, 9:45 and midnight; which do you want to go?** (limited)

Examples:

**What problems have you had?** (unlimited possibilities)

**Which shirt should I wear?** (limited)

**What is your address?** (unlimited possibilities)

**Which channel is the programme on?** (limited)

### The uses of *whose* and *whom*

English has a genitive form of the pronoun **who**, **whose**, which has no CATALAN equivalent. It is used to inquire about the possessor of an object or objects and, because it is an adjective, it precedes the noun it modifies. Its use is very similar to that of the possessive pronouns: for example, compare **It is his book** (*És el seu llibre*) with **It is whose book?** (*De qui és el llibre?*). However, because it is a question, the more common construction for the latter sentence is **Whose book is it?** Finally we might mention that the syntax for **whose** is exactly the same as that for **which**.

Compare:

**Which horse won?**

**Whose horse won?**

Examples:

**Whose glass is this?**

**Whose papers are these?**

**Whose cars were they?**

The pronoun **whom** is the objective form of the pronoun **who**, corresponding to the objective personal pronoun (**him**, **her**, **it** or **they**). It is almost never used in modern English. As a direct object it is almost always substituted with **who**. For example, it is much more natural to say **Who did you see?** than **Whom did you see?** The pronoun **whom** is often seen after a preposition, since to many speakers the combination prep. + **who** sounds wrong, though the preposition is more commonly transferred to the end of the expressions (see above). Finally, there is one expression in which **whom** is always used: quantity adj/adv + **of whom**. Examples:

**We met many men, most of whom were on vacation.**

**There were several writers there, some of whom we knew.**

## 5.6. Interrogative adverbial expressions

### How much, how many

The expressions **how much** and **how many** inquire about quantities; the former modifies noncount nouns and verbs and the latter is restricted to the modification of plural count nouns. Examples:

Modifying noncount nouns:

**How much wine do you drink every day?**

**How much work have you done?**

Modifying verbs:

**How much do you drink every day?**

**How much do you weigh?**

Modifying plural count nouns:

**How many books have you read?**

**How many children go to this school?**

Remember that, unlike in CATALAN, in English **people** (*gent*) is plural and **money** (*diners*) is singular.

**How many people were there?**  
**How much money do you have?**

### How far

The expression **how far** is used to inquire about distances and corresponds to two CATALAN expressions, *(a) quina distància* and  *fins on*. Note too that where CATALAN uses the verb *haver-hi*, English uses the combination **it + be** (see also Sy 4.2.3.). Examples:

**How far is it from here to Sallent?**  
**How far is the Earth from the Sun?**  
**How far is the camera supposed to be from the object?**  
**How far is the beach?**  
**How far did they take you?**  
**How far do you want to walk?**

### How often

The expression **how often** is used to inquire about frequency and corresponds to the CATALAN expression *cada quan*. Examples:

**How often do you go there?**  
**How often are we supposed to clean the filters?**  
**How often should I drink coffee?**

### How long

The expression **how long** is used in two contexts: when it inquires about time periods it corresponds to the CATALAN expression *quant (temps)* (and variants), and this is the sense we will study in this section. However, it can also be used to inquire about length and we will study this meaning in the following section.

The correspondence between **how long** and its CATALAN equivalents is a bit complicated and is easier to understand if we consider the difference between *quant (temps)* and *quant (temps) fa*. The former is translated quite straightforwardly. Examples:

**How long do the batteries last?**  
**How long did you have to wait for them?**

On the other hand, the expression *quant (temps) fa* is translated into English in three ways.

Affirmative expressions in the present tense are translated **how long + present perfect** or **present perfect continuous**. Examples:

**How long have you had this car?**  
**How long have you been here?**  
**How long have you studied/been studying English?**

Negative expressions in the present tense are usually translated **how long has it been since + present perfect**. Examples:

**How long has it been since you've been there?**  
**How long has it been since you have eaten meat?**

Expressions in the past tense are translated **how long ago + simple past**. Examples:

**How long ago did they arrive?**  
**How long ago were they there?**  
**How long ago did you have lunch?** (not ~~How long ago have you had lunch?~~)

### How + adj. + be

When inquiring about the height, length, width or depth of an object, English generally uses an expression of the type **how** + adjective + **be**, where CATALAN uses *quina* + noun + *tenir/fer*. Examples:

**How tall are you? How tall is the Eiffel Tower?**

**How long is this pencil?**

**How wide is this sheet of paper?**

**How deep is Loch Ness?**

The difference between **tall** and **high** is somewhat ambiguous. The adjective **tall** is used for people, animals and objects that are significantly taller than they are wide. So we can have **tall people, a tall dog, a tall tower, tall trees, tall buildings**, etc., but a mountain is generally **high** because it is as wide as it is tall. On the other hand, only **high** can be used to describe something that is above, not touching, the ground. So we say **a plane flies high, that lightbulb is high up, and a window-washer works high above the ground**. Here is a curious example: **Mt Everest is the world's highest peak, but Mauna Kea is the tallest mountain on Earth**. Mauna Kea is an undersea mountain and, since its height is not measured from ground level, it is referred to as being **tall**.

Finally when inquiring about someone's age, English uses the expression **how old** + **be** + noun. Examples:

**How old are your parents?**

**How old were they when they married?**

### 5.7. Modal verbs

We can conveniently divide the modal verbs into three classifications: **modal auxiliaries**, **modal idioms** and **marginal modals**. The most important of these are the **modal auxiliaries**, but because of their special limitations there are contexts in which they cannot be used, and in these cases their associated **modal idioms** come into play. What's more, we will also look at two **modal idioms** that have meanings independent of the modal auxiliaries: **would rather** and **had better**. Finally we should mention the two marginal modals, **dare** and **need**, so called because they can be used as both modal auxiliaries and regular verbs.

#### Characteristics of the modal auxiliaries

The nine modal auxiliaries – **can, could, will, would, shall, should, may, might** and **must** – have the following identifying characteristics.

They have a single form: that is, they have no infinitive, -s form, gerund, simple past or participle.

They are always used with a bare infinitive, never the full infinitive.

They can refer to the present, past or future.

They cannot be combined.

What's more, because they are auxiliaries, they form negative expressions by adding the adverb **not** – in fact, all the modal auxiliaries can be contracted with **not** – and they are inverted with the subject to form questions. They can also be used in question tags and short answers (see Sy 5.3.).

### 5.7.1. *Can, could, be able to, be allowed to*

The modal auxiliaries **can** and **could** are used to express ability and possibility, to ask for and to give permission, and to make offers. They are nearly always translated by a corresponding form of the CATALAN verb *poder*. Examples:

**I can help you now/tomorrow.**  
**I could drive when I was sixteen.**  
**We can/could call her tomorrow.**  
**Can we park here?**  
**You can stay out as late as you like.**  
**Can I help you?**

When speaking of ability, English will often use **can** where CATALAN will use the verb *saber*. Examples:

**I can sew = I know how to sew.**  
**Can you type? = Do you know how to type?**

#### **Can**

The modal auxiliary **can** is generally used to express ability or possibility in the present and can also express these concepts in the future. However, when the future is speculative, the combination **will be able to** is generally used. Moreover, when referring to future permission, we use **will be allowed to**.

Present: **I can go there now.**  
Present: **I can carry three of those boxes.**  
Future: **We can pay you tomorrow.**  
Speculative future: **Soon we'll be able to** (not ~~Soon we can~~) **offer more services.**  
Speculative future: **When the fog lifts we'll be able to see where we are.**  
Present permission: **I can use Father's tools whenever I like.**  
Future permission: **Next year we will be allowed to leave early.**

#### **Could**

The modal auxiliary **could** is used first of all to express general ability or possibility in the past. Note that specific abilities in the past are generally expressed using **was/were able to** and that the present perfect tense almost always uses the **have/has been able to** construction.

General ability or possibility in the past

**I could speak French when I was younger.**  
**Nothing could be done.**

Specific ability or possibility in the past

**I was able to** (not ~~I could~~) **establish two facts.**  
**They were able to** (not ~~They could~~) **confirm that the payment had been made.**

Present perfect

**Have you been able to find another flat?**  
**We haven't been able to see them yet.**

However, when the past specific ability or possibility is negative, then the use of **couldn't** is generally preferred.

**We couldn't** (more usual than **weren't able to**) **get into the house.**

**He couldn't** (more usual than **wasn't able to**) **pay his bills.**

The modal auxiliary **could** is also commonly used in conditional expressions. This use is much more common than the equivalent construction, **would be able to**.

**If I had more money I could travel a lot more.**

**If you moved to Berkeley we could see each other more often.**

The construction **could have** + participle is used to describe unrealized hypothetical actions in the past.

**If we had had more time we could have played longer.**

**If they hadn't hurried they could have missed the train.**

Finally, **could** is used in polite suggestions and requests.

**If you're feeling tired we could always stay home.**

**Could you please not smoke in here?**

### **Be able to**

As we have seen, the construction **be able to** is employed in English when the use of **can** or **could** is impossible. In most cases, this is because we need a verb form, such as an infinitive or participle, that the modal auxiliaries cannot provide. Here are some typical examples of the use of **be able to**.

When an infinitive is needed

**If no one else calls, I'll be able to finish this evening.**

**The police want to be able to trace mobile phone calls.**

**You'll have to be able to deal with children.**

**You should be able to tell the difference between the two photos.**

**I used to be able to touch my toes without bending my knees.**

When a gerund is needed

**I like being able to walk to work.**

**Being able to speak English is more and more important.**

When a participle is needed

**We haven't been able to find a replacement.**

**It would have helped if I had been able to speak with her.**

Simple past

**I'm glad you were able to see the programme.**

### **Be allowed to**

Because the modal auxiliaries **can** and **could** can express other concepts besides permission, we sometimes use the construction **be allowed to** to make it clear that we are talking about permission and not ability, possibility, etc. Consider the following example.

**He can drive his father's car.**

As it stands, this sentence can mean either that he is able to drive the car, or that he has permission to drive the car. The use of **be allowed to** removes this ambiguity.

**He is allowed to drive his father's car.**

**We are not allowed to smoke on the playground.**

**Were you allowed to express your opinions?**

**Cars are not allowed to park near the police station.**

Finally, when referring to specific permission given in the past, the form **be allowed to** must be used. Example:

**Last night I was allowed to (not ~~I could~~) lead the prayer.**

### 5.7.2. *May and might*

The most important uses of **may** and **might** are to express possibility. The expression **I may/might go** means **It is possible that I will go**. When referring to the present, in modern English, **may** and **might** are basically synonymous, though some speakers consider that the use of **might** indicates a slightly lesser possibility. However, when referring to the past, **might** can have two meanings whereas **may** has only one. The examples in the following sections should make this clear.

In the final section, we will briefly touch on the use of **may** to request permission.

#### ***May and might in the present***

**It may/might rain tomorrow.**

**I may/might be a little late.**

**There may/might be many people in favour of the proposal.**

**Anna may/might not know the answer.**

Note that when the reference is to a present or future continuing action, in English the continuous tense is generally required. Examples:

**They may/might be waiting for us now/tomorrow. (Not ~~They may wait for us.~~)**

**They may/might be having dinner (now/when we arrive tomorrow). (Not ~~They may have dinner.~~)**

Note that first conditional expressions can use either **may** or **might**, but that second conditional expressions must use **might**. Examples:

**If you speak more slowly, we may/might be able to understand you.**

**If you spoke more slowly, we might be able to understand you.**

#### ***May and might in the past***

When referring to possibilities in the past, we use the constructions **may have** + participle and **might have** + participle. The former always indicates that the speaker is uncertain whether the past possibility became reality or not. On the other hand, the expression **might have** + participle is ambiguous; it can be either a synonym for **may have** + participle, indicating that we don't know whether the possibility came about or not, or it can have a similar meaning to the **could have** + participle construction, describing unrealized hypothetical actions in the past.

Examples in which we don't know if the possibility occurred or not.

**I don't see them; they may/might have missed the train.**

**We may/might have taken a wrong turn back there.**

**I'm afraid that I may/might have offended him.**

Examples in which we know that the possibility did not occur. Note that these are all cases of the third conditional.

**If I had known that, I might have acted differently.**

**If we had been alone, I might have told her what I really thought.**

**He might have learned even more about their language if he hadn't fallen ill.**

### **May and can to request permission**

The use of **may** to request permission is generally restricted to formal uses. As a rule of thumb, we can say that if in CATALAN we would address the person as *vostè* or *vós*, in English we will request permission using **may**, whereas we use **can** when we would address the person as *tu*. Examples:

**May I help you?** (Formal)

**Can I help you?** (Informal)

### **5.7.3. Will, shall, be going to, be to**

The modal auxiliaries **will** and **shall**, and the modal idioms **be going to** and **be to** can all be used to refer to the future. In the case of **be going to** and **be to**, there are no alternative meanings – that is, these modal idioms always indicate some future activity or state, and their study was thus completed in sections Sy 5.1.6. On the other hand, the modal auxiliaries **will** and **shall** are used in other non-future contexts, and it is these uses that we will study in this section.

#### **Non-future uses of will**

The most important non-future use of the modal auxiliary **will** is expressing volition or lack of volition in non-affirmative contexts. In these cases, the use of **will** is the same as the constructions **am/are/is willing to**, in questions, and **refuse + full infinitive**, in negations. Examples:

**Will you (= Are you willing to) work weekends?**

**I won't (= I refuse to) date men who smoke.**

The **will** form is also used in certain colloquial impersonal expressions, expressing a lack of will on the part of inanimate objects. Examples:

**The car won't start.**

**My guitar won't stay in tune.**

We can also use **will** to refer to latent possibility. For example:

**How fast will this car go?**

Finally, **will** is used colloquially, emphasized and without contraction, to express annoyance. For example:

**He will have his own way.**



### Non-future use of *shall*

There is only one non-future use of **shall**. It is used in a kind of ‘imperative-interrogative’ context to offer suggestions and only in the first person. Examples:

**Shall we dance?**

**Shall I open the window?**

Note that this use is always oral and is limited to cases in which there is a certain familiarity between the speaker and hearer: that is, if two people are unacquainted, the **shall** form would sound somewhat presumptuous, and the more formal **Would you like to dance?** and **Do you mind if I open the window?** should be used.

### *Would, used to*

The most common use of the modal auxiliary **would** is in conditional expressions, a use that we have already studied in section Sy 5.1.7. However, **would** is also used, synonymously with the modal idiom **used to**, when referring to repeated actions in the past, as well as in other less important contexts. What’s more, **used to** is used in three other contexts, as we will see.

### *Would and used to* describing repeated actions in the past

Both the modal auxiliary **would** and the modal idiom **used to** can be used to describe routine repeated actions in the past. Note that, when **would** is used in this context, it must describe actions, not states, and be accompanied by a time clause indicating when the past action occurred. (The same is true of the CATALAN *solia* and variants.) As we will see, the **used to** form is not thus limited. Examples:

**When I was young I [used to/would] swim every day.**

**Small clinics that doctors used to set up in a room are giving way to large clinics.**

**When I was working in Girona I [used to/would] have lunch at three.**

When we are referring to a series of repeated actions in the past, it is more natural to use **would** than **used to**. Example:

**On Sundays Joan used to get up early. He’d walk as far as the town where his friends would be waiting for him. They’d have breakfast together in the bar and then he’d ride his motorbike to the cove, where he would swim and sun-bathe until it was time for lunch.**

### Other non-conditional uses of *would*

As is the case of the modal auxiliary **will**, **would** can be used in certain other non-conditional contexts. The most important of these is to express a lack of volition in the past, equivalent to the expression **refused** + full infinitive. For example:

**They wouldn’t (= They refused to) let us in.**

The **would** form is also used in certain impersonal expressions, expressing a lack of will on the part of inanimate objects. For example:

**I tried to open the door but the key wouldn’t turn.**

Finally, **would** is used colloquially, emphasized and without contraction, to express annoyance. For example:

**You would forget!**

### ***Used to meaning no longer***

The most important use of the modal idiom **used to** is to describe past actions or states that no longer continue. It corresponds to the CATALAN construction *abans + pretèrit imperfect*. Unlike the **would** form (see above), it can be used to describe former states and does not need to be accompanied by a time clause. Examples:

**It used to be a bank.**

**There used to be a restaurant on this corner.**

Negative and interrogative constructions normally use the auxiliary **did**. Examples:

**He didn't use to talk so much.**

**Did you use to go out with Sara?**

### ***Uses of be used to and get used to***

The constructions **be used to** and **get used to** are not modal idioms, but we include them here because of the obvious confusion that results from the use of **used to** in two completely different contexts. It is perhaps helpful to note that **be used to** means the same as **be accustomed to** and **get used to** equals **get accustomed to**; they correspond, respectively, to the CATALAN *estar acostumat a* and *acostumar-se a*. Note that in these constructions the word **to** is a preposition and, if followed by a verb, requires the gerund. Examples:

**I'm used to the noise; it no longer bothers me.**

**I'm used to working at night.**

**I'm getting used to the rain.**

**I still haven't gotten [AmE] used to having dinner so late.**

Finally, it is worth noting that English has no equivalent to the present tense use of the verb *acostumar* when it describes habitual action or states in the present; a paraphrase must be used. Examples:

**They usually arrive at nine.**

**It usually rains in November.**

### ***5.7.4. Must, have to, be supposed to, should, ought to, have got to***

Obligation in English can be expressed using various constructions, most of which add some shade of meaning to the obligation. All are translated by some form of the CATALAN periphrasis *haver de*. Perhaps the easiest method of organizing these various forms is by verb tense, which is what we shall now proceed to do.

#### **Obligation (and prohibition) in the present tense**

English has four constructions to express various kinds of affirmative obligation in the present, which we will call (somewhat arbitrarily) general, emphatic, impersonal and informal.

**General: have to**

The **have to** form is the most common and most generic way of expressing obligation. In BrE the use of **have to** implies that someone else has imposed the obligation, though this is not the case in AmE. In the negative and interrogative the auxiliaries **do** and **does** must be used, referring to a lack of obligation, rather than prohibition. Examples:

**We have to (or We must) fight against this prejudice.**  
**The doctor says I have to quit smoking.**  
**Do we have to get up early tomorrow?**  
**You do not have to present any documentation to accredit it.**

**Emphatic: must**

In both AmE and BrE the use of the modal auxiliary **must** often emphasizes the authority or desire of the speaker. Moreover, in BrE, it implies that it is the speaker who has decided that something is necessary. In AmE, the **must** form is only used in formal contexts. In BrE the use of **must** in interrogative sentences is less common than **have to**, and generally has **you** as the subject; in the negative, **mustn't** expresses prohibition in a rather emphatic way. (For a less authoritative way to express prohibition, see both the use of **shouldn't**, and **not supposed to** in the following sections.) Examples:

**(BrE) We must hurry or we'll be late. (AmE) We have to hurry...**  
**(BrE) We must be coherent with the model. (AmE) We have to be...**  
**(BrE and AmE) Fines must be paid within thirty days.**  
**Must you leave now? We'd be so happy if you stayed.**  
**You mustn't blame yourselves.**

**Impersonal: be supposed to**

The **be supposed to** construction is used to indicate that the obligation comes from someone other than the speaker. It can also be used to speak of what is done as a matter of course. In the negative, it is the most polite way of expressing a prohibition; it implies that it isn't the speaker who makes the rules, but that the prohibition comes from some other source, such as society as a whole. Finally, when used in the first person, it can imply that the speaker doesn't really intend to fulfil the obligation. Examples:

**Mum says you're supposed to come in for dinner.**  
**Do you remember how long we're supposed to cook the rice?**  
**When are we supposed to hand in our homework?**  
**You're not supposed to turn left here.**  
**We're supposed to make a reservation, but I doubt it's really necessary.**

**Informal: have got to**

The **have got to** construction has the same meaning as **have to**. It can only be used in the present tense and is generally limited to oral expressions. In informal AmE, **got to** can be contracted to **gotta** and the auxiliary **have** can be suppressed. Examples:

**I've got to (or I've gotta or I gotta) get some more money.**  
**We've got to (or We've gotta or We gotta) do better than that.**

### Obligation in the future

Obligation in the future is generally expressed in English using the synonymous constructions **will have to** + bare infinitive or **be going to have to** + bare infinitive. (In informal English, **going to** can be contracted to **gonna** and **have to** is pronounced /haf tə/.)

**We'll have to** (or **We're going to have to**) **finish tomorrow.**

**You'll have to wait** (or **You're going to have to wait**).

### Obligation in the conditional: *should* and *ought to*

Obligation in the conditional in English is nearly always expressed using the construction **would have to** + bare infinitive and the sense of this form is always hypothetical. Unfortunately, the corresponding CATALAN construction, *hauria de* and variants, can express not only a hypothesis, but also advice, moral obligation and what seems likely and, in the latter three cases, English uses either the modal auxiliary **should** or the modal idiom **ought to**. The following examples should make this clear.

Hypothesis (conditional sense)

**If you wanted to travel to China, you would have to get a visa.**

Advice

**You should** (or **You ought to**) **study more.**

Moral obligation

**We should** (or **We ought to**) **love our fellow man.**

What seems likely

**They should** (or **They ought to**) **be there by now.**

Therefore, different expressions such as **What would I have to do?** (a hypothetical question) and **What should I do?** (a question requesting advice) are both translated by the same CATALAN expression: *Què hauria de fer?* This needs to be taken into account when translating from CATALAN to English. Examples:

**We would have to leave early if it started to snow.**

**We should** (or **We ought to**) **accept that the web is the dominant infrastructure.**

**These exercises should be easy for you.**

Note that the modal idiom **ought to** is more often used in the affirmative; questions and negations commonly use **should**. Examples:

**Should the police have authority in these matters?** (More usual than **Ought the police to**).

**References should not be used in footnotes.** (More usual than **References ought not to**).

In the past, the hypothetical conditional is expressed **would have had to** + bare infinitive and the various meanings expressed by **should** are expressed **should have** + participle. Note that in this case there is no ambiguity, since CATALAN expresses these concepts differently as well. Examples:

**If John hadn't done it, I would have had to do it.**

**You should have studied more.**

### Obligation in the past tenses

There are three possibilities for talking about past obligations. The first is the construction **had to** + bare infinitive and describes a past obligation that has been carried out. It generally corresponds to the CATALAN periphrastic form of *haver de*. The second, the construction **was/were supposed to** + bare infinitive, describes past actions that were not carried out and corresponds to the CATALAN imperfect form of *haver de*. Examples:

Yesterday I **had to** go to Barcelona.

Yesterday I **was supposed to** go to Barcelona, but I stayed home.

He **didn't have to** take his final exam.

He **wasn't supposed to** interfere. (But he did.)

Finally, we can use the present perfect form of **have to** (**have/has had to** + bare infinitive) to talk about repeated past obligations or a past obligation that is relevant to the present. This construction corresponds to the indefinite tense of *haver de*. Examples:

I've **had to** do a lot of homework this quarter.

What **have you had to** deal with?

Here is your paper; I've **had to** make a few changes.

#### 5.7.5. *Would rather*

When talking about preferences, English most often uses the modal idiom **would rather**: eg I **would (I'd) rather stay home** (*M'estimo més quedar-me a casa*). The verb **prefer** is also possible: I **prefer to stay home**. Examples:

I'd **rather have** red wine than white.

I'd **rather not talk** about it.

Would you **rather watch** TV?

I'd **rather sleep** than watch cricket.

If our preference is that someone else do something, the construction **would rather** [+ **that**] + noun + simple past is used. Examples:

We'd **rather** [that] he **had** more experience.

I'd **rather** [that] you **came** tomorrow.

They'd **rather** [that] we **didn't** park here.

Would you **rather** [that] I **told** the police?

#### 5.7.6. *Had better*

The construction **had better** + bare infinitive is used to refer to necessary, sometimes urgent action, and corresponds to the CATALAN *val més que*. It is stronger than **should** (see Sy 5.7.) and can sometimes even have a threatening overtone. The **had** is usually abbreviated to **'d**. Examples:

We'd **better save** our money.

You'd **better have** another drink.

You'd **better be** quiet.

They'd **better not say** that to her face.

He'd **better not come** back here.

### 5.7.7. *Be about to*

In English we use the construction **be about to** + bare infinitive to refer to an imminent action. It corresponds to the CATALAN expression *estar a punt de* + infinitive, which should not be confused with the similar *estar a punt per a* + infinitive (in English, **to be ready to** + bare infinitive). Examples:

**I can't talk now; we're about to have lunch.**

**Can you make it quick? I was just about to leave.**

In negative constructions it indicates a firm unwillingness to do something on the part of the subject. Examples:

**We're not about to change our minds.**

**I'm not about to let her make a fool of me.**

### 5.7.8. *Dare and need*

In non-affirmative contexts, the marginal modals **dare** (*atrevir-se*) and **need** (*necessitar, caldre*) can be used both as modal auxiliaries and as normal lexical verbs. Note that, when **dare** is used as a lexical verb, it can take as a complement either the bare infinitive or the full infinitive.

Used as modal auxiliaries	Used as normal lexical verbs
Dare she tell him?	Does she dare (to) tell him?
She daren't do anything wrong.	She doesn't dare (to) do anything wrong.
Need we be there early?	Do we need to be there early?
You needn't lock the door.	You don't need to lock the door.

In BrE, the **needn't** form generally indicates a lack of obligation, whereas the lexical form **don't/doesn't need to** is used more for a lack of necessity.

The lexical verb **dare** can also take a personal complement, in which case it corresponds to the CATALAN *desafiar*. For example:

**I dare you to eat a worm.**

Only the lexical form of **dare** can be used in the past, whereas **need** can be used in the construction **needn't have** + participle. Some speakers detect a difference between a sentence such as **You needn't have done it** and **You didn't have to do it**. The first indicates that someone has done something that was unnecessary, whereas the second indicates that someone did not have the obligation to do something and therefore, presumably, did not do it.

## 5.8. Prepositional verbs

As is the case in CATALAN, some English verbs require prepositions before their complements, and it is often the case that the meaning of the preposition has nothing to do with its normal lexical meaning. For example, in English we **rely on** someone (*refiar-se d'algú*), though the

lexical meaning of **on** (*sobre, damunt, etc.*) seems inappropriate. Similarly, there are verbs that require a preposition in English whose counterparts in CATALAN are transitive: for example, in English we **wait for** someone (*esperar algú*), but the preposition is not used in CATALAN.

There are literally hundreds of prepositional verbs in English, and a complete list is beyond the scope of this study. Instead we will only mention forty or fifty of the most important prepositional verbs and divide them into four groups.

Prepositional verbs whose prepositions keep their basic meanings

**I agree with you.**

Prepositional verbs whose prepositions do not keep their basic meanings

**This depends on you.**

Prepositional verbs that are not prepositional in CATALAN

**We listen to the radio.**

Prepositional verbs whose prepositions do not keep the meaning of the verb

**He fell for the scam.**

As an aid to Catalan speakers, later in this section we will offer a list of CATALAN prepositional verbs that are not prepositional in English. For example, *gaudir de* = **enjoy** (*Gaudeixo de la vida* = **I enjoy life**).

For a more detailed study of English prepositional verbs and their relation to CATALAN, see the online book *Phrasal verbs, pas a pas* at [visca.com/apac/pv-nsum/](http://visca.com/apac/pv-nsum/).

### Prepositional verbs whose prepositions relate directly to their CATALAN equivalents

The following table lists some of the most important English prepositional verbs whose prepositions maintain their basic meaning.

agree with arrive at arrive in belong to care about complain about/of fight for forget about get to know about/of insist on lead to	meet with pass through play with read about refer to speak about/of subscribe to suffer from talk about/of turn into work on worry about
--	---

The difference between **arrive at** and **arrive in** is that the former is generally used for locations, such as train and bus stations, schools, theatres, etc., whereas the latter is used more commonly before place names.

The verb **care about** means *preocupar-se de* in the sense of having a regard for something, or that it matters to you.

The verb **get to** means to **arrive at**.

The verb **lead to** always has an impersonal subject.

The verb **meet with** means *trobar-se amb* in the sense of having a meeting or getting



together for some purpose. When *trobar-se amb* means meeting by chance, the preposition **with** is not used.

The difference between the prepositions **of** and **about**, when following the verbs **complain**, **know**, **speak** or **talk** is that the combinations with **of** imply the simple mentioning of a subject, whereas the combinations with **about** imply discussion. However, this is a generalization and there can be exceptions.

### Prepositional verbs whose prepositions do not relate directly to their CATALAN equivalents

The following table lists some of the most important English prepositional verbs whose prepositions do not maintain their basic meaning.

<p>ask about – <i>preguntar per (algú)</i>  beware of – <i>anar amb compte amb</i>  count on – <i>comptar amb</i>  deal with – <i>tractar de, ocupar-se de</i>  depend on – <i>dependre de</i>  dream about/of – <i>somiar amb (or en)</i>  fit into – <i>formar part de</i>  graduate from – <i>llicenciar-se a</i>  laugh at – <i>riure's de</i>  leave for – <i>marxar cap a (un lloc)</i></p>	<p>live on – <i>viure de (alimentar-se de)</i>  look like – <i>assemblar-se a</i>  pay by – <i>pagar amb (per mitjà de)</i>  rely on – <i>refiar-se de</i>  run into – <i>xocar contra</i>  steal from – <i>robar a (algú, una entitat)</i>  travel by – <i>viatjar en (or amb)</i>  trip over – <i>ensopegar amb (sentit físic)</i>  vouch for – <i>respondre de (fer-se garant)</i></p>
---	---

The verb **beware of** is normally used in the imperative.

The verb **deal with** means *ocupar-se* in the senses of taking action on or being concerned with. It means *tractar de* in the sense of conducting oneself with others or doing business with someone.

The difference between **think about** and **think of** is that the former implies rumination and contemplation, whereas the latter implies simply having something present in the mind. Remember both these verbs can also mean to have an opinion.

### Prepositional verbs that are not prepositional in CATALAN

The following table lists some of the most important English prepositional verbs that are translated in CATALAN by transitive verbs.

<p>appeal to – <i>atraure</i>  apply for – <i>sol·licitar</i>  approve of – <i>aprovar</i>  ask for – <i>demanar (sol·licitar)</i>  check on – <i>comprovar, verificar, controlar</i>  compensate for – <i>compensar</i>  deal with – <i>tractar (manejar)</i>  focus on – <i>enfocar</i>  listen to – <i>escoltar</i>  look at – <i>mirar</i>  look for – <i>cercar</i></p>	<p>look into – <i>investigar</i>  look like – <i>semblar</i>  pay for – <i>pagar</i>  plan on – <i>proposar-se/anticipar</i>  run after – <i>empaitar</i>  search for – <i>cercar</i>  stand for – <i>representar/defensar/tolerar</i>  step on – <i>trepitjar</i>  substitute for – <i>substituir</i>  wait for – <i>esperar (restar)</i>  wait on – <i>atendre</i></p>
--	--



The verb **appeal to** means *atraure* in the sense of being attractive or interesting.

The verb **apply for** is generally used for scholarships, jobs, credit cards, etc.: ie, in situations in which you would normally have to submit an application.

The verb **ask for** means *demanar* in the sense of requesting something. When it means *preguntar* the preposition is not used. Examples: **We asked the waiter for the bill**; **We asked the waiter a question**.

The verb **look at** means *mirar* when what is observed is static; we use **watch** when what is observed is active. So **we look at paintings**, but **we watch a football match**.

We use the verb **pay for** when the object is the thing acquired, but the preposition is not used when what is paid is money, debts, the rent, etc. So, **I paid for the wine**, but **I paid the rent**.

The verb **stand for** means *representar* in the sense of representing by a symbol: for example, **The letters BBC stand for British Broadcasting Corporation**. On the other hand, it means *defensar* in the sense of supporting a cause or opinion: for example, **He stands for honesty and fair play**.

### Prepositional verbs whose prepositions change the meaning of the verb

Although it is somewhat unusual, there are prepositions that change the basic meaning of the verbs they follow. Here is a list of some of the most important.

<b>account for</b> – <i>explicar</i> <b>allow for</b> – <i>tenir en compte</i> <b>come across</b> – <i>trobar (per casualitat)</i> <b>come by</b> – <i>adquirir</i> <b>do without</b> – <i>prescindir de</i> <b>drive at</b> – <i>voler dir, voler anar a parar</i> <b>fall for</b> – <i>deixar-se enganyar per/enamorar-se de</i> <b>get over</b> – <i>superar (una situació o un esdeveniment traumàtic)/fer-se a la idea/recuperar-se de</i>	<b>go over</b> – <i>repassar</i> <b>pick on</b> – <i>criticar injustament, victimitzar</i> <b>relate to</b> – <i>empatitzar amb</i> <b>run into</b> – <i>trobar-se amb (per casualitat)/xocar contra</i> <b>take to</b> – <i>aficionar-se a/aprovar</i> <b>touch on</b> – <i>mentonar breument</i>
--	---

The object of the first sense of **fall for** is always the scam or swindle, never the person who perpetrates it.

### CATALAN prepositional verbs that are not prepositional in English

The following table lists some of the most important CATALAN prepositional verbs that are translated in English by transitive verbs.

<b>acostar-se a</b> – <b>approach</b> <b>adonar-se de</b> – <b>notice, realize</b> <b>assistir a</b> – <b>attend</b> <b>casar-se amb</b> – <b>marry</b> <b>entrar a</b> – <b>enter</b> <b>equivaler a</b> – <b>equal</b> <b>fiar-se de</b> – <b>trust</b>	<b>gaudir de</b> – <b>enjoy</b> <b>jugar a</b> – <b>play</b> <b>marxar de</b> – <b>leave</b> <b>penedir-se de</b> – <b>regret</b> <b>telefonar a</b> – <b>phone</b> <b>trucar a</b> – <b>call</b>
---	--

The verb *casar-se* is translated by **get married** when used without a preposition: *Vol casar-se* = **He wants to get married**; *Vol casar-se amb tu* = **He wants to marry you**.

In abstract senses, we can use **enter into**: for example, **He entered into politics** or **Financial matters entered into the discussion**.

### 5.9. Adverbial verbs (phrasal verbs)

**Adverbial verbs**, popularly called **phrasal verbs**, are verbs that combine a verb and an adverb into a single verbal unit. A simple example is **run away** (*fugir*). Although there are English manuals that group prepositional verbs (see Sy 5.8.) along with the adverbials, there are several good reasons for not doing so.

Prepositional verbs are generally translated in CATALAN by prepositional verbs – eg **talk about** = *parlar de*, whereas adverbial verbs are generally translated by either simple verbs or locutions. For example, **depend on**, a prepositional verb, is translated *dependre de*, whereas **call off**, an adverbial verb, is translated *anul·lar*.

When an adverbial verb is transitive, its object can usually be placed either between the two elements or after the second. For example, **She put on her dress** = **She put her dress on** (*Es va posar el vestit*). With prepositional verbs, the object always follows the preposition. Note too that when the object of an adverbial verb is a pronoun, the pronoun must come between the two elements: **She put it on**, not ~~**She put on it**~~.

When a verb and an adverb combine to form an adverbial verb, the result is often a verb whose meaning is completely different from that of the two elements considered separately. For example, **go over** means *repassar*. This happens much less frequently with prepositional verbs.

The translation of adverbial verbs into CATALAN is often determined by the adverb, rather than the verb. For example, the adverbial verbs **come back**, **go back**, **walk back** and **run back** are all translated by the CATALAN verb *tornar* (*tornar cap aquí*, *tornar cap allà*, *tornar caminant* and *tornar corrent*).

Finally, a rather high percentage of adverbial verbs have more than one meaning, whereas most prepositional verbs tend to have only one.

#### Grouping phrasal verbs according to the adverb

English has well over two thousand adverbial verbs with more than three thousand different meanings, and an enumeration of all these is obviously beyond the scope of the present study. (For a detailed look at these verbs, see *Phrasal verbs, pas a pas* [[visca.com/apac/pv-nsum/](http://visca.com/apac/pv-nsum/)] and *Phrasal verbs traduïts al català* [[visca.com/apac/pv/phrasal-verbs.html](http://visca.com/apac/pv/phrasal-verbs.html)].) However, there are only about seventeen adverbs that are commonly used to form part of adverbial verbs and, as we hope to show, there are significant advantages to organizing the adverbial verbs according to these adverbs. We offer first a list of them along with their approximate translations in CATALAN. The numbers in parentheses indicate the number of adverbial verbs of which these adverbs form part in the online dictionary *Phrasal verbs traduïts al català*. For example, there are nearly 400 different adverbial verbs that include the adverb **up**, whereas there are only sixteen that include **aside**.

<b>about</b> (36) <b>across</b> (23) <b>along</b> (24) <b>around</b> (63) <b>aside</b> (16) <b>away</b> (87) <b>back</b> (75) <b>by</b> (23)	<b>down</b> (143) <b>in</b> (135) <b>off</b> (161) <b>on</b> (104) <b>out</b> (303) <b>over</b> (64) <b>through</b> (25) <b>up</b> (382)
---	---

Note that all these adverbs have meanings that have to do with placement or direction. The most easily understood phrasal verbs are those that combine a movement verb with an adverb indicating direction. Here are several examples, along with their CATALAN equivalents.

<b>go across</b> – <i>travessar (d'un costat a l'altre)</i> <b>move along</b> – <i>continuar endavant, circular</i> <b>pass around</b> – <i>fer circular</i> <b>pull aside</b> – <i>apartar estirant</i> <b>put away</b> – <i>desar</i> <b>come back</b> – <i>tornar (cap aquí)</i> <b>drive by</b> – <i>passar conduint</i> <b>go down</b> – <i>baixar (cap allà)</i>	<b>come in</b> – <i>entrar (cap aquí)</i> <b>run off</b> – <i>fugir, marxar corrent</i> <b>move on</b> – <i>continuar endavant</i> <b>bring out</b> – <i>treure (cap aquí)</i> <b>take over</b> – <i>portar (cap allà)</i> <b>pass through</b> – <i>ser de passada</i> <b>walk up</b> – <i>pujar caminant</i>
---	---

We would like to emphasize again that it is often the adverb of an adverbial verb that determines its translation in CATALAN. In other words, the English adverb determines which CATALAN verb translates the verb-adverb combination. Moreover, the sense of the English verb is in many cases expressed by a CATALAN gerund. Here are five common examples.

Up	Down
<b>come up</b> – <i>pujar (cap aquí)</i>	<b>come down</b> – <i>baixar (cap aquí)</i>
<b>bring up</b> – <i>pujar (una cosa, cap aquí)</i>	<b>bring down</b> – <i>baixar (una cosa, cap aquí)</i>
<b>drive up</b> – <i>pujar conduint</i>	<b>drive down</b> – <i>baixar conduint</i>
<b>go up</b> – <i>pujar (cap allà)</i>	<b>go down</b> – <i>baixar (cap allà)</i>
<b>run up</b> – <i>pujar corrent</i>	<b>run down</b> – <i>baixar corrent</i>
<b>take up</b> – <i>pujar (una cosa, cap aquí)</i>	<b>take down</b> – <i>baixar (una cosa, cap aquí)</i>
<b>walk up</b> – <i>pujar caminant</i>	<b>walk down</b> – <i>baixar caminant</i>

In	Out
<b>come in</b> – <i>entrar (cap aquí)</i>	<b>come out</b> – <i>sortir (cap aquí)</i>
<b>bring in</b> – <i>entrar (una cosa, cap aquí)</i>	<b>bring out</b> – <i>treure (una cosa, cap aquí)</i>
<b>drive in</b> – <i>entrar conduint</i>	<b>drive out</b> – <i>sortir conduint</i>
<b>go in</b> – <i>entrar (cap allà)</i>	<b>go out</b> – <i>sortir (cap allà)</i>
<b>run in</b> – <i>entrar corrent</i>	<b>run out</b> – <i>sortir corrent</i>
<b>take in</b> – <i>entrar (una cosa, cap aquí)</i>	<b>take out</b> – <i>treure (una cosa, cap aquí)</i>
<b>walk in</b> – <i>entrar caminant</i>	<b>walk out</b> – <i>sortir caminant</i>

Back	
come back – tornar ( <i>cap aquí</i> )	run back – tornar corrent
bring back – tornar ( <i>una cosa, cap aquí</i> )	take back – tornar ( <i>una cosa, cap allà</i> )
drive back – tornar conduint	walk back – tornar caminant
go back – tornar ( <i>cap allà</i> )	

### Other adverbial meanings

Although the adverbs that form part of adverbial verbs usually describe position or movement, some of them can have other meanings as well. For example, the adverb **up** sometimes indicates an upward action (eg **go up** means *pujar, anar cap amunt*), but it can also express the ideas of completion or destruction. For example, **burn up** can mean *cremar(-se) completament* and **blow up** can mean *esclatar* or *fer esclatar*. The following is a list of some adverbs for which this is the case.

**Away** expresses the idea of disappearance or complete elimination.

**Down** expresses the idea of reduction or destruction.

**Off** expresses the idea of disappearance, disconnection or completion.

**On** expresses the idea of connection or putting two things together.

**Out** expresses the idea of finishing, disappearance or obliteration.

**Up** expresses the idea of finishing or destruction.

Examples:

**When surgeons clean a wound, they cut away the dead tissue.**

*Quan els cirurgians netegen una ferida tallen (i descarten) el teixit mort.*

**His house burned down last night.**

*Anit es va cremar del tot la seva casa.*

**The pain eased off and completely vanished.**

*El dolor s'ha alleujat i ha desaparegut del tot.*

**Hold on tight and don't let go!**

*Agafa't fort i no et deixis anar!*

**She made a wish and blew out all the candles.**

*Va demanar un desig i apagà (amb una bufada) totes les espelmes.*

**They burned up all the evidence.**

*Van cremar completament totes les proves.*

### Phrasal verbs whose meanings are unpredictable

Until this point, all the phrasal verbs we have studied have maintained the sense of both the verbs and the adverbs. Unfortunately, a very large number of phrasal verbs have meanings that are completely different from the meanings of the verb and adverb taken separately. Unfortunately also, learning to recognize and understand these verbs is critical, for although many of them have simpler equivalents – for example, **raising children** and **bringing up children** are synonymous – English speakers make frequent use of phrasal verbs in both speech and writing. One might say that learning these irrational compound verbs is like learning figures of speech: in the same way that English speakers must learn that *fer campana* means **not to attend**, Catalans must learn that **turn out** can mean *resultar*.

Here is a small sample of some of the most important phrasal verbs in English. Observe that many have multiple meanings.

**Be off** – 1 *anar-se'n* 2 *ser passat (menjar)*

**Break down** – 1 *dividir (per a analitzar)* 2 *desmuntar* 3 *patir un col·lapse físic o mental*

**Come off** – 1 *desenganxar-se* 2 *tenir èxit (un afer)*

**Come up** – 1 *acostar-se* 2 *sortir (un imprevist)*

**Get on** – 1 *avenir-se* 2 *anar fent* 3 *fer-se gran*

**Make up** – 1 *inventar* 2 *recuperar (p.e., una classe)* 3 *completar* 4 *fer les paus* 5 *maquillar-se*

**Pick up** – 1 *adquirir per casualitat* 2 *detenir (un sospitós)* 3 *passar a recollir (una persona)*  
4 *endreçar (una sala)*

**Point out** – *comentar, remarcar, destacar*

**Put on** – 1 *posar-se (peça de roba, joies, etc.)* 2 *produir (un espectacle)* 3 *guanyar (pes)* 4 *encendre (el llum)* 5 *enganyar (humorísticament)*

**Take in** – 1 *allotjar (algú a casa)* 2 *enganyar (algú)* 3 *entendre (p.e., una idea)* 4 *estrènyer (una peça de roba)* 5 *acollir (un animal)*

**Work out** – 1 *fer exercici, entrenar-se* 2 *tenir un bon resultat*

## 5.10. Use of infinitives

English has two infinitive forms: the bare infinitive (eg **work**) and the full infinitive (eg **to work**). The first is used almost exclusively in verb tenses (eg **we work**, **we don't work**, etc.), the imperative (eg **Work harder!**), and as the complement of modal verbs (eg **we can work**, **we will work**, etc.). On the other hand, the full infinitive is used principally as a complement – whether of nouns, adjectives or verbs, or as an extraposed subject (eg **It is important to work** = **To work is important**). These constructions are a bit more complicated and we'll give examples of them in the pertinent sections.

### 5.10.1. Use of the bare infinitive

The bare infinitive is the form that defines a verb; it is the form we find in the dictionary. Its most important use is as the verb form in the simple present (see Sy 5.1.1.), and as the form used in non-affirmative constructions in the simple present and simple past (see Sy 5.2.). What's more, it is also used in subjunctive constructions. Examples:

**We live in Vic.**

**We don't live in Vic.**

**We didn't live in Vic.**

**I insist that it be soon.**

The bare infinitive is also used in imperative constructions (see Sy 5.13.). Examples:

**Come here.**

**Don't leave.**

**Let's go home.**

Another important use of the bare infinitive is as the complement of modal verbs and such semi-modal constructions as **be able to**, **be supposed to**, **have to**, etc. Examples:

**They might not know.**

**I can't see a thing.**

**You're not supposed to close the window.**

**No one had to pay.**

The bare infinitive can also be used as the complement of constructions headed by verbs of perception, such as **hear** and **see**, and the causative verbs **make**, **have** and **let**. As we shall see in the following section (Sy 5.11.), gerunds can also be used in this context with little change in meaning. Examples:

**I heard them come in.**  
**I see you like dogs.**  
**I'll make him tell the truth.**  
**We'll have him call you.**  
**They don't let me use the phone.**

Finally, the bare infinitive can occasionally be used in combination with a noun to describe what the noun does. Examples:

bee- <u>sting</u> earthquake hangman head <u>ache</u> heart <u>beat</u>	<u>rattle</u> snake sun <u>rise</u> tu <u>g</u> boat wa <u>ch</u> dog
---	--

### 5.10.2. Use of the full infinitive

The full infinitive is used primarily as a complement of adjectives, nouns and verbs, as an extraposed subject, or in expressions of intention. We will see that CATALAN translates many of these cases inserting a preposition.

#### The full infinitive as an adjective or noun complement

Here are some common examples of the use of the full infinitive as an adjective or noun complement.

**We're pleased to see you.**  
**I was foolish to believe them.**  
**She's certain to win.**  
**He's afraid to go in.**  
**I'm too tired to start over.**  
**I have a lot to do.**  
**You have the right to remain silent.**  
**It was a night to remember.**  
**It's time to get up.**  
**I have enough money to buy it.**

It should be noted that if the subject of the infinitive is different to that of the main verb, the construction adjective/noun + **for** + noun + full infinitive must be used. Note that in this second case CATALAN uses a subordinate construction with the verb in the subjunctive. Examples:

**We'd be happy for them to stay with us.**  
*Estaríem contents que es quedessin amb nosaltres.*  
**It's too heavy for me to lift.**  
*És massa pesant perquè jo el pugui aixecar.*

**We need someplace for them to play.**

*Ens cal algun lloc perquè puguin tocar.*

**There's enough light for them to see the road.**

*Hi ha prou llum perquè puguin veure el camí.*

### The full infinitive as a verb complement

The majority of English verbs that take other verbs as complements require the full infinitive. We should mention here, however, that many also require gerunds, and we will study these cases in the following section (Sy 5.11.). An extensive article detailing the possibilities of verb complementation by infinitives or gerunds in English can be found at [visca.com/apac/articles/verb\\_comp/](http://visca.com/apac/articles/verb_comp/).

In the following examples, note that English precedes the full infinitive with the adverb **not** when the infinitive is negative.

**I want to see your pictures.**

**I'm beginning to see the light.**

**They've offered to help us.**

**We've decided not to go.**

**We tried not to laugh.**

When the subject of the infinitive is different to that of the main clause, English uses the construction verb + noun + full infinitive. Examples:

**I want him to know how I feel.**

**I like my children to eat well.**

### The full infinitive as an extraposed subject

Although the full infinitive is not normally used as a subject – in this case, a gerund is generally used – it is used in the construction **it is** + adjective + full infinitive. Examples:

**It is important to be on time.**

**It was hard to hear him.**

**It would be better to wait.**

### The full infinitive in expressions of intention

English uses the full infinitive in expressions of intention. It is important to keep in mind that in this case CATALAN uses the combination *per/per a* + infinitive, and to avoid translating the preposition *per/per a* into English. Examples:

**I go to Girona to see my uncle.**

*Vaig a Girona per veure el meu oncle.*

**They should have stopped to sleep.**

*Haurien d'haver parat per a dormir.*

**I eat to live, I don't live to eat.**

*Menjo per viure, no visc per menjar.*

## 5.11. Use of gerunds (present participles)

In modern English this form is often referred to as the gerund-participle, since it is used as both a present participle in continuous tenses and as a gerund (a verb that acts as a noun). For the sake of simplicity, we will call this form simply a gerund.

English gerunds can act as verbs, adverbs, adjectives and nouns. We will dedicate a subsection to each of these cases.

### Use of gerunds as verbs

The gerund is used, following the verb **be**, in all English continuous tenses. See Sy 5.1. Examples:

**They are singing.**  
**I was reading in the library.**  
**I have been waiting for you for an hour.**  
**He hadn't been working long.**

### Use of gerunds as adverbs

As is the case in CATALAN, the gerund can be used as an adverb to describe a verb. Examples:

**I slipped coming out of the house.**  
**They ran screaming from the house.**  
**Turning the corner, we saw our friends.**

### Use of gerunds as adjectives

We have already seen in section Sy 2.5. that gerundial adjectives normally describe permanent qualities of the nouns they modify (eg **an interesting film** *una pel·lícula interessant*, **a boring class** *una classe avorrida*). They can also be used to describe what the noun they modify is used for, as in the case of **dining room**, or to describe the kind of thing being modified, eg **drinking water**. Examples:

chewing gum dancing girl frying pan	hiding place sleeping bag swimming pool
---	---

### Use of gerunds as nouns

When used as the subjects of a sentence, an English verb usually takes on the form of a gerund, unlike the CATALAN, which uses the infinitive. The gerund is also used as a subject complement. Examples:

**Swimming is healthy.**  
**Learning English is difficult.**  
**Smoking is expensive.**  
**My favourite sport is fishing.**  
**Her first job was selling clothes.**

The gerund is also always used after prepositions.

**I did it without thinking.**  
**I'm looking forward to seeing you.**  
**Kings aren't used to waiting.**



For certain verbs, the gerund is also used as a verb complement. In some cases, this corresponds to CATALAN use, but in many others English uses a gerund where CATALAN uses an infinitive. What's more, some verbs can take either an infinitive or a gerund as a complement, sometimes with a change of meaning, sometimes without.

Verbs that can only take a gerund as a verb complement	
avoid	keep
can't help	mind
can't stand	miss
delay	practise
deny	quit
end up	recommend
enjoy	regret
finish	risk
give up	

Examples:

**I avoid seeing them.**  
**We can't help being concerned.**  
**They ended up staying home.**  
**She still hasn't finished dressing.**  
**Keep working!**  
**I didn't mind waiting.**  
**I have to quit smoking.**

Here is a list of verbs that can take either the gerund or the infinitive as a verb complement, with little or no change of meaning.

Verbs that can take either the gerund or the infinitive as a verb complement	
afford	like
begin	prefer
continue	start
hate	

Examples:

**We can't afford living/to live in Barcelona.**  
**I hate to mop/mopping.**  
**When Isabel came in we started singing/to sing.**

The verbs **mean**, **need**, **remember**, **stop** and **try** can take either a gerund or verb as a complement, but the meanings are quite different. Examples:

**We mean to do it without fail!**  
*Estem decidits de fer-ho sens falta!*  
**That would mean driving all night.**  
*Això voldria dir portar cotxe tota la nit.*

**We need to talk.**

*Hem de parlar.*

**The house needs painting.**

*Cal pintar la casa.*

**I didn't remember to close the door.**

*No vaig recordar de tancar la porta.*

**I remember closing the door.**

*Recordo d'haver tancat la porta.*

**We stopped to have lunch.**

*Vam parar per dinar.*

**He stopped crying when he saw her.**

*Va parar de plorar quan la veié.*

**The cat tried to get down from the tree.**

*El gat intentava de baixar de l'arbre.*

**Have you tried emailing him?**

*Ho has intentat enviant-li un correu electrònic?*

**I want to see you after the meeting.**

*Et vull veure després de la festa.*

### 5.12. Use of past participles

The past participle in English is used in three main ways:

As a verb form, following the auxiliary **have**.

**We have finished our homework.**

**He said he hadn't seen her.**

**Tomorrow we will have been here one year.**

**If you had phoned me, I would have come over.**

As a verb form in the passive voice.

**The house was built last year.**

**The meal has been prepared by the men.**

**She is respected by everyone who knows her.**

As an adjective, modifying nouns.

**This broken glass should be swept up.**

**The written word has great power.**

**Please correct the attached files.**

We should also note that participles are used with the verbs **get** (and, less often, **turn**) to describe a change of state. Here is a list of some of the most common of these constructions, which are generally translated by pronominal verbs in CATALAN.

get bored – *avorrir-se*  
get dressed – *vestir-se*  
get drunk – *emborratxar-se*  
get excited – *emocionar-se*  
get hurt – *fer-se mal*  
get lost – *perdre's*

get married – *casar-se*  
get scared – *espantar-se*  
get stuck – *encallar-se*  
get tired – *cansar-se*  
get used to – *acostumar-se*

Examples:

**I'm getting bored.**  
**He got hurt.**  
**Don't get lost!**  
**When are you getting married?**  
**I got tired of waiting.**  
**You'll get used to it.**

### 5.13. Imperatives

#### Second person (singular and plural) affirmative

In English, the second person singular and plural imperative affirmative – ie, the bare infinitive – without a subject is used to give orders. Note that, whereas CATALAN has four different expressions, depending on the person addressed, English has just one. Examples:

**Come here.**  
*Vine. Veniu. Vingui. Vinguin.*  
**Speak more slowly.**  
*Parla/Parleu/Parli/Parlin més a poc a poc.*

#### Second person (singular and plural) negative

The second person singular and plural imperative negative is expressed with the composition **don't** + bare infinitive. Note again that, whereas CATALAN has four different expressions, depending on the person addressed, English has just one. Examples:

**Don't touch me!**  
*No em toquis/toqueu/toqui/toquin!*  
**Don't leave the door open.**  
*No deixis/deixeu/deixi/deixin la porta oberta.*

#### First person plural affirmative

The first person plural affirmative in English is expressed with the combination **let's** + bare infinitive. The word **let's** is a contraction of **let us**, which is only used in formal contexts (eg **Let us pray** = *Preguem*). Examples:

**Let's look at the search results in greater detail.**  
**Let's go to the beach.**

#### First person plural negative

The first person plural negative in English is expressed with the combination **let's not** + bare infinitive. Again, the word **let's** is a contraction of **let us**, which is only used in formal contexts (eg **let us not forget those who have died for their beliefs** = *no oblidem els qui han mort per les seves creences*). Examples:

**Let's not leave yet.**  
**Let's not be hasty.**

#### First person (singular and plural) interrogative

The first person interrogative imperative is an informal way of making a suggestion, and uses the construction **shall I/we** + bare infinitive. Examples:

**Shall we dance?**  
**Shall I open the window?**

## 6. Adverbs

Adverbs generally modify verbs, though they can also modify adjectives, other adverbs or whole sentences. Common examples of adverbs include **easily** or **very**. The following section looks at the use of adverbs in English.

### 6.1. Position of adverbs

When modifying verbs, adverbs in English can appear in three different positions: initial, final and central. (For the position of adverbs when modifying adjectives or other adverbs, see section Sy 6.9.) Most adverbs are restricted to one or another of these positions, though there are some that have a certain flexibility. In this section we will study each of these three positions and give a general idea of which adverbs are so located. However, the proper placement of adverbs in English is complex, and so we will always include this position in the individual descriptions of the adverbs throughout the subsections of Sy 6.

#### Initial position

Adverbs in initial position come before the subject of a sentence or clause and are sometimes followed by comma. Almost all the conjunctive adverbs come before the subject, such as **at least** and **at any rate** (*com a mínim, si més no*), **all the same** and **even so** (*tanmateix, no obstant això*) or **now then** and **that said** (*ara bé*). (See section Sy 6.8. for a complete list.) This is also true of the adverbs **maybe** and **perhaps** (*potser*) or **actually** and **really** when they mean *en efecte, realment, el fet és que*, etc. Here are some typical examples.

Conjunctive adverbs

**At least 60% of working hours must be spent on site each week.**

**I doubt, therefore I might be.**

**Now then, that doesn't mean that we won't help you if we can.**

Adverbs of doubt or possibility

**Maybe I was there and maybe I wasn't.**

**"It must get very cold in Seattle." "Actually, the climate is quite mild."**

Finally, though adverbs of manner are normally placed after the verb, many of them can take initial position if the direct object is somewhat long or complex, or when one wants to emphasize the adverb.

**We quickly gained over sixty thousand readers and thirty thousand comments.**

**He easily won the chess match.**

#### Final position

Adverbs that come after verbs, or after the objects of those verbs, are considered to be in final position. Nearly all adverbs of manner, such as **well** and **slowly**, are so placed, as we will see in section Sy 6.2. Moreover, final position is most usual for adverbs of specific time, such as **today** and **last night**, and certain adverbs of relative time, such as **yet** and **early**. Finally, adverbs of place and direction, which, as we shall see in section Sy 6.3., normally combine with verbs to form so-called **phrasal verbs**, always follow the verb they modify. However, in this case (as we saw in section Sy 5.9.), the object can often follow either the adverb or the verb. For example, in the sentence **I left that part out**, the object follows the verb, but in the sentence **I left out that part**, it follows the adverb.

Here are some typical examples of adverbs placed in final position.

Adverbs of manner

**We speak German well.**

**They process, gather and calculate data quickly.**

Adverbs of time

**I did it yesterday.**

**We haven't finished yet.**

Adverbs of place and direction

**They've gone away.**

**Important aspects have been left out.**

### Central position

The rule for placing adverbs in central position is that they go after the auxiliary and also after the verb **be**. However, if there is no auxiliary, which is the case when the verb tense is simple present or simple past, they come before the verb. Examples:

After the auxiliary or **be**

**We have always admired you.**

**I'll never forget our night together.**

**There should never be two headings in a row.**

**They are usually here.**

Before the verb

**I still have your books.**

**We almost had an accident.**

In the case of negations and questions, the order is normally the following.

Negation: subject + auxiliary + not + adverb + verb

Question: auxiliary + subject + adverb + verb

Examples:

**Young people do not frequently play videogames.**

**Have you ever been in London?**

**Haven't they just got [AmE gotten] here?**

Note that the adverb **still** is exceptional in that it must precede a contracted negative.

**They still haven't paid me.**

The adverbs most frequently found in central position are those of frequency – eg **always** (*sempre*) and **often** (*sovint*), those of relative time – eg **already** (*ja*) and **soon** (*aviat*) – and those of affirmation – eg **also** (*també*) and **certainly** (*certament*).

## 6.2. Adverbs of manner

The most common adverbs of manner are those derived from adjectives by adding the suffix **-ly**. We have already studied these morphological changes in section Mo 6.

Adverbs of manner are usually found in final position, though many of them can precede the verb if the direct object is somewhat long or complex, or when one wants to emphasize other elements in the sentence. It should be remembered that in nearly all cases, it is not correct to put an adverb between a verb and its direct object. Examples:

**He landed the plane safely** or **He safely landed the plane.** (Not ~~He landed safely the plane.~~)

In some cases, the adverb derived from the adjective has a completely different meaning. Here is a list of some of the most important adverbs in this class.

Adjective	Adverb
<b>bare</b> – <i>nu, despullat</i>	<b>barely</b> – <i>amb prou feines, a penes</i>
<b>hard</b> – <i>dur, fort</i>	<b>hardly</b> – <i>amb prou feines, a penes</i>
<b>late</b> – <i>tard</i>	<b>lately</b> – <i>últimament</i>
<b>present</b> – <i>present, actual</i>	<b>presently</b> – <i>aviat; correntment</i>
<b>scarce</b> – <i>escàs</i>	<b>scarcely</b> – <i>amb prou feines, a penes</i>
<b>short</b> – <i>baix, curt</i>	<b>shortly</b> – <i>aviat (d'aquí a poc temps)</i>

### Adverbs and adjectives with the same form

In English, many adjectives and adverbs share the same form. For example, **fast** means both *ràpid* and *ràpidament* (eg **a fast car**, **he runs fast**). In some cases, the **-ly** adverb form also exists, but it has a different meaning than the simple adverb. For example, consider the word **hard**: as an adjective it means either *dur* or *difícil* – eg **a hard surface** (*una superfície dura*), **a hard job** (*una feina difícil*), as an adverb it means *fort* or *de valent* – eg **to work hard** (*treballar fort*), but as an **-ly** adverb it means *amb prou feines* – eg **he is hardly able to stand** (*amb prou feines pot estar-se dret*).

Here is a list of the most important adjectives and adverbs that share the same form, along with their **-ly** meanings, where they exist. An underline indicates that the adverb in question can also modify adjectives or other adverbs (see section Sy 6.9.).

Adjectives and adverbs with the same form				
Adj./adv.	Meaning of adjective	Meaning of adverb	The <b>-ly</b> form	Meaning of <b>-ly</b> adverb
<b>alone</b>	<i>sol</i>	<i>a soles</i>	*	*
<b>clean</b>	<i>net</i>	<i>totalment</i>	<b>cleanly</b>	<i>netament</i>
<b>dead</b>	<i>mort</i>	<i>exactament, totalment</i>	*	*
<b>dear</b>	<i>estimat</i>	<i>car</i>	<b>dearly</b>	<i>car, tendrament</i>
<b>dirty</b>	<i>brut</i>	<i>brut</i>	*	*
<b>easy</b>	<i>fàcil</i>	<i>amb calma</i>	<b>easily</b>	<i>fàcilment</i>
<b>fast</b>	<i>ràpid</i>	<i>ràpidament, fermament</i>	*	*
<b>fine</b>	<i>menut, bo</i>	<i>bé</i>	<b>finely</b>	<i>finament</i>
<b>flat</b>	<i>pla, bemoll</i>	<i>desafinadament (massa greu)</i>	<b>flatly</b>	<i>rotundament</i>
<b>hard</b>	<i>dur, difícil</i>	<i>fort</i>	<u><b>hardly</b></u>	<i>amb prou feines</i>

Adjectives and adverbs with the same form				
Adj./adv.	Meaning of adjective	Meaning of adverb	The -ly form	Meaning of -ly adverb
<b>high</b>	<i>alt</i>	<i>alt, enlaire</i>	<b><u>highly</u></b>	<i>molt, altament</i>
<b>just</b>	<i>just, correcte</i>	<i>solament, exactament</i>	<b><u>justly</u></b>	<i>amb dret</i>
<b>late</b>	<i>tard, endarrerit</i>	<i>tard</i>	<b>lately</b>	<i>últimament</i>
<b>loud</b>	<i>alt de volum</i>	<i>alt de volum</i>	<b>loudly</b>	<i>fort(ament)</i>
<b>low</b>	<i>baix</i>	<i>baix</i>	<b>lowly</b>	<i>humilment</i>
<b>most</b>	<i>(el) més, la majoria de</i>	<i>més</i>	<b>mostly</b>	<i>principalment</i>
<b><u>pretty</u></b>	<i>bonic</i>	<i>força</i>	<b>prettily</b>	<i>amb gràcia</i>
<b><u>right</u></b>	<i>just, correcte</i>	<i>just, exactament, a la dreta, correctament</i>	<b>rightly</b>	<i>degudament</i>
<b>sharp</b>	<i>esmolat, agut, sostingut</i>	<i>desafinadament (massa alt), en punt</i>	<b><u>sharply</u></b>	<i>agudament, asprament</i>
<b>straight</b>	<i>dret, recte</i>	<i>directament, en línia recta</i>	*	*
<b>well</b>	<i>bo de salut</i>	<i>bé</i>	*	*
<b>wide</b>	<i>ample, gran</i>	<i>separadament, del tot</i>	<b><u>widely</u></b>	<i>extensament</i>

Examples:

I want to talk to you alone.

Is today your name day? Sorry, I clean forgot!

I was dead sure they wouldn't find out.

Buy cheap, sell dear.

Be careful; they have a reputation for playing dirty.

Take it easy, there's no rush.

The little girl sat on her father's lap, clinging fast.

"How are you?" "Fine, thanks, and you?"

You're singing flat/sharp.

We are working hard to resolve this problem.

Don't talk so loud.

We need to find solutions that bring these technologies to those who need them most.

Though there are a couple of mistakes, the essay is pretty well done.

They parked their car right behind mine.

Go straight for three blocks, turn left, then look for a place to park.

He opened the door wide and invited us in.

#### Adverbs of manner not derived from adjectives

There are four important adverbs of manner that are not derived from adjectives. They can all modify adjectives and other adverbs (see section Sy 6.9.).

**Almost** – *gairebé, quasi*

We've almost finished.

I almost fell in the water.

**Just** – 1 *en aquest mateix moment (acabar de + infinitiu)* 2 *solament, sols, només*

**He has just come in.**

**He was just telling us it wasn't going to rain when we heard thunder.**

**I was just trying to help!**

**Only** – *solament, sols, tan sols, només, únicament*

**They only pay local calls.**

**I've only seen her twice.**

**Well** – *bé, ben*

**He knows the region well.**

**The team has played well tonight.**

### Adverbial idioms of manner

As is the case in CATALAN, English has many adverbial idioms that describe how something is done. The following is a list of some of the most important.

at full speed	half and half	in public
at intervals	in a flash	in secret
at least	in a hurry	in silence
at length	in a moment	in the same way
at most	in advance	in this way
at once	in cold blood	in vain
at random	in confidence	like this
at short notice	in detail	more or less
by chance	in earnest	now and then
by choice	in full	on and off
by degrees	in fun	on and on
by fits and starts	in good faith	on purpose
by hand	in high spirits	on the sly
by heart	in jest	on the square
for good	in order	so
for free	in part	
for keeps	in private	

### 6.3. Adverbs of place and direction

The majority of English adverbs of place or direction combine with verbs to form an entity called, in English, a **phrasal verb** or, perhaps more accurately, an **adverbial verb**. There are no corresponding verbal constructions in CATALAN and this fact, combined with various other difficulties discussed in section Sy 5.9., makes the study of phrasal verbs particularly complex. In this section, we will limit ourselves to providing a list of these adverbs and a general description of their meanings in CATALAN. More information can be found in the aforementioned section Sy 5.9. and online in the manual *Phrasal Verbs, pas a pas* ([visca.com/apac/pv-nsum/](http://visca.com/apac/pv-nsum/)).



**Adverbs that are often used to form phrasal verbs**

**About** – 1 *aquí, allà* 2 *per aquí, per allà, arreu* 3 *en la direcció contrària*

**We passed by their house but they weren't about.**

*Vam passar per casa seva però no hi eren.*

**We've been running about for hours.**

*Correm arreu (amunt i avall) des de fa hores.*

**When I heard the door open, I slowly turned about.**

*En sentir obrir la porta, m'he girat a poc a poc.*

**Across** – 1 *aquí, allà* (travessant una distància curta) 2 *a l'altre costat; d'un costat a l'altre*

**I've just been across to meet our new neighbors.**

*Acabo d'anar allà (or a l'altre costat del carrer, or a l'altre pis, etc.) per conèixer els nous veïns.*

**The stream is pretty wide; can you get across?**

*La riera és força ampla; la pots travessar?*

**Along** – *endavant* (continuant en una línia de moviment)

**They went out to dinner and I decided to go along.**

*Van sortir a sopar i vaig decidir d'anar-hi també (or ... d'acompanyar-los).*

**Certain myths are still maintained that have been dragged along since antiquity.**

*Alguns mites que s'han continuat arrossegant des de l'antiguitat encara es mantenen.*

**We drove along for hours, enjoying the view.**

*Anàvem amb cotxe durant hores, gaudint de la vista.*

**Apart** – *a part, separadament*

**They're still married, but live apart.**

*Encara són casats, però viuen separats.*

**(A)round** – 1 *aquí, allà* 2 *arreu* 3 *en la direcció contrària* 4 *en direcció circular*

**When I got downstairs, Mercè wasn't around.**

*Quan vaig arribar a baix, la Mercè no hi era.*

**She reported that a strange man had been following her around.**

*Ella va denunciar que un desconegut l'havia seguit (arreu).*

**Don't turn around until we tell you to.**

*No et giris fins que t'avisem.*

**The pigeons circled around and around.**

*Els coloms giravoltaven.*

**Aside** – *a part*

**He set his books aside and turned on the TV.**

*Va apartar els llibres i va engegar la televisió.*

**Away** – 1 *fora, lluny* 2 *cap a un altre lloc*

**My grandparents are away.**

*Els meus avis són fora.*

**I'd like to move away, but I'm afraid.**

*M'agradaria anar-me'n (a viure) en un altre lloc, però tinc por.*

**Back** – 1 endarrere 2 a un lloc o a una posició original

**Take two steps back, please.**

*Fes-te dos passos endarrere, si us plau.*

**What time did you get back?**

*A quina hora vau tornar?*

**By** – passant un cert punt en l'espai o en el temps

**They waved to us as we passed by.**

*Ens han saludat (amb la mà) quan passàvem.*

**Down** – avall, cap avall

**Now the elevator is going down.**

*Ara l'ascensor baixa (va avall).*

**In** – 1 (cap a) dins 2 aquí (a casa), allà

**He came in and took off his coat.**

*Va entrar i es va treure l'abric.*

**Is the doctor in?**

*És aquí, el metge?*

**Off** – 1 a distància, a un altre lloc 2 fora de lloc, no tocant 3 indicant separació, allunyament o la idea de no sobre

**He was only here a moment, then he hurried off.**

*Només ha estat aquí un instant i després se n'ha anat amb pressa.*

**A button has dropped off.**

*Ha saltat un botó.*

**He was trying to walk along the fence but fell off.**

*Intentava de caminar per sobre de la tanca, però caigué.*

**On** – 1 endavant 2 a sobre 3 subjectat, en contacte amb

**After the accident, the officer asked the bystanders to move on.**

*Després de l'accident, el policia demanà que la gent circulés.*

**As the bus moved away, Pere unexpectedly jumped on.**

*Quan l'autobús s'apartava, en Pere inesperadament hi pujà.*

**Hold on tight!**

*Agafa't fort!*

**Out** – 1 (cap a) fora 2 no aquí, no allà 3 sobresortir 4 distribuir

**She went out to look at the sky.**

*Ella va sortir per mirar el cel.*

**Mr Evans is out; can you call back in twenty minutes?**

*El senyor Evans no hi és; podeu tornar a trucar d'aquí a vint minuts?*

**I cut my knee on a nail that was sticking out.**

*M'he tallat el genoll amb un clau que sobresortia.*

**The gamblers watched him intently as he dealt out the cards.**

*Els jugadors el miraven atentament mentre distribuïa les cartes.*

**Over** – 1 aquí, allà 2 per sobre; d'un costat a l'altre (passant per damunt)

**Run over to Sandra's and tell her dinner is ready.**

*Corre a casa de la Sandra i digues-li que el sopar és a punt.*

**Our spirits lifted after the clouds passed over.**

*Ens vam animar quan els núvols van haver passat.*

**Through** – *de punt a punt, de banda a banda*

**The door was so narrow we couldn't get through.**

*La porta era tan estreta que no hi podíem passar.*

**Up** – 1 *amunt, cap amunt* 2 *acostant-se a* 3 *fora del llit*

**How does a balloon stay up?**

*Com s'aguanta enlaire un globus?*

**A stranger came up to me and asked for a light.**

*Un desconegut se'm va acostar i em demanà foc.*

**Isn't Isidre up yet?**

*Encara no s'ha llevat l'Isidre?*

### **Here, there and home**

The adverbs **here** and **there** present few difficulties, since they almost completely correspond to their CATALAN equivalents *aquí* and *allà*. Note that *allà* is often substituted by *hi* – eg *Hi són ara* – and must be translated as **there** in English: **They are there now**.

Both **here** and **there** are also used colloquially to indicate or call attention to the presence of someone or something **here** or **there**. Examples:

**Here's our bus.**

**Here's a letter we've been saving for you.**

**Look! There's Mònica!**

**There goes the bus.**

The word **home** can be used as an adverb with verbs indicating direction; its meaning is *a casa, de casa*, etc. In AmE, **home** can also be used with verbs indicating presence, such as **be** and **stay**. Examples:

**It's time to go home.**

**After the dinner party he had to be driven home.**

**What time did you get home last night?**

**I phoned them but they weren't home.**

**I'd rather stay home.**

**He leaves home at ten.**

### **The -wards suffix**

The suffix **-ward/-wards** can be combined with various adverbs of place and direction with a sense of *cap a aquesta direcció*. Examples:

**backwards** (*enrere*)

**downwards** (*cap avall*)

**forwards** (*endavant*)

**inwards** (*endins*)

**leftwards** (*cap a l'esquerra*)

**onwards** (*endavant*)  
**outwards** (*enfora*)  
**rightwards** (*cap a la dreta*)  
**towards** (*cap a*)  
**upwards** (*cap amunt*)

#### 6.4. Adverbs of time

Adverbs of time are used to provide more information on when an event happens: for example, **already**, **yet** or **soon**.

##### 6.4.1. Frequency adverbs

**Always** – *sempre* (central position)

**We always get up at seven.**

**Ever** – *mai* (*alguna vegada*) (central position)

The frequency adverb **ever** is generally used in comparative, interrogative and conditional sentences and corresponds to the CATALAN *mai* in the same circumstances. Examples:

**The traffic last Sunday was worse than ever.**

**Have you ever been to Boston?**

**If you ever come to Gósol, be sure to drop in.**

Although **ever** can be used in negative sentences – eg **I haven't ever seen that film** – the use of **never** (see below) in such cases is much more usual: **I've never seen that film** (*No he vist mai aquesta pel·lícula*). However, the use of **ever** is more common than **never** in negative questions: the expression **Haven't you ever heard of Facebook?** (*No has sentit mai a parlar de Facebook?*) is more usual than **Have you never heard...**

**From time to time** – *de tant en tant* (usually final position; sometimes initial position)

**They stop by from time to time to say hello.**

**From time to time, we may provide you with information about new features.**

**Never** – (*no*) *mai* (central position)

See above for the comments concerning the use of **never** versus **ever**.

**I'll never fall in love again!**

**There are people who will never team up with others.**

**We've never been to England.**

**Often** – *sovint* (central position or final position)

**We often go there or We go there often.**

**I've often heard about her or I've heard about her often.**

**Sometimes** – *a vegades* (initial, central or, less frequently, final position)

**Sometimes quality can be a problem or Quality can sometimes be a problem or Quality can be a problem sometimes.**

**Sometimes it's better to wait or It's better sometimes to wait or It's better to wait sometimes.**

#### 6.4.2. Adverbs of relative time

**Afterwards** – *després, més tard* (final position; sometimes initial)

**I didn't find out about it until afterwards.**

**How do you think you'll feel about it afterwards?**

**We had dinner on the beach; afterwards, we went for a walk.**

**Already** – *ja*, in the sense of *des d'abans* (central position, but can be used in final position when interrogative and expressing surprise)

**I've already met your wife.**

**When we got there, Lluc had already left.**

**Are you already here? or Are you here already?**

**Any more/any longer** – *ja no* (final position)

Note that, when used negatively in temporal expressions, **any more** and **any longer** are synonyms of **no longer** (see below).

**Audiences are not a passive entity any more/any longer.**

**Don't they live here any more/any longer?**

**At once** – 1 *alhora, al mateix temps* 2 *de seguida* (both senses, final position)

**You can't do three things at once.**

*No pots fer tres coses alhora.*

**Laura's in trouble; we'll have to leave at once!**

*La Laura s'ha ficat en un embolic; haurem de marxar de seguida!*

**At the same time** – *alhora, al mateix temps* (final position)

**With our new TV you can watch two programmes at the same time.**

**Before** – *abans* (final position)

**Have you ever been here before?**

**Before long** – *ben aviat, aviat, abans de gaire* (initial and, less frequently, final position)

**Before long he was making more money than his father.**

**Early** – *d'hora, abans d'hora* (final position)

**We usually have lunch early.**

*Acostumem a dinar d'hora.*

**You're twenty minutes early.**

*Has arribat vint minuts abans d'hora (massa d'hora).*

**In time** – *a temps, amb temps* (final position)

**We weren't in time for the opening number.**

**You're just in time for lunch.**

**Late** – *tard* (final position)

**You're late.**

**The train from Lleida is usually late.**

**Meanwhile (meantime)** – *mentrestant* (initial position)

**Meanwhile, some societies are weakened by bad government, inequalities and a lack of education.**

**No longer** – *ja no* (central position)

Note that **no longer** is a synonym of **any more** and **any longer** (see above).

**Many products are no longer produced for a local market.**

**On time** – *a l'hora, puntual* (final position)

**He has trouble getting to work on time.**

**I doubt if they'll be on time.**

**So far** – *fins ara* (both initial and final position)

Note that there is a subtle difference between **so far** and its apparent synonym **until now** (see below). We use **so far** to mean *fins ara* when the situation has not changed: eg **We haven't had any problems so far** (*Fins ara no hem tingut problemes*) means that we still have no problems. On the other hand, **We haven't had any problems until now** (*Fins ara no havíem tingut problemes*) means that there has been a change and that now we do have problems.

**This is all I've been able to do so far.**

**So far, he hasn't shown any interest at all.**

**Soon** – *aviat* (final position or central position if following the auxiliaries **will** or **would**)

**He'll be here soon or He'll soon be here.**

**They will be available in English soon or They will soon be available in English.**

**I have to drive back soon.**

**Still** – *encara* (central position, but before a negative contraction)

**He still wants to come with us.**

**Do you still work at the Port del Comte?**

**I still don't understand.**

**Is she still not speaking to him?**

**Yet** – 1 *ja* question 2 *encara* negative (final position)

**Have they finished painting your bathroom yet?**

*Ja han acabat de pintar el vostre lavabo?*

**Is it nine o'clock yet?**

*Ja són les nou?*

**They don't know me yet.**

*Encara no em coneixen.*

**We haven't had a chance to call them yet.**

*Encara no hem tingut l'oportunitat de trucar-los.*

#### 6.4.3. Adverbs of specific time

The term **adverbs of specific time** refers not only to such terms as **today**, **tomorrow** and **yesterday**, but to days, months and periods of the day. All these adverbs normally occur in final position, though they can, for reasons of style, be used in initial position.

It is important to keep in mind that, when the names of the months or days of the week – or the terms **week** (*setmana*), **month** (*mes*) or **year** (*any*) – refer to the one immediately previous, English uses the adjective **last**, but without the article. Similarly, when referring to the one immediately to come, it uses **next**, again without the article. Examples:

**We met them last March.**

**They're going to Tamariu next Tuesday.**

**August was much rainier this year than last year.**

**We won't know how much we'll have to pay until next week.**

Finally, it should be mentioned that all these adverbs can also be used as nouns. Examples:

**Tomorrow will be sunny.**

**Last Wednesday was the twenty-third of May.**

**Now is the time to tell him how you feel.**

**Now** – *ara*

**You can come over now or wait until tomorrow.**

**Nobody's there now.**

Note also the expressions **by now** (*a hores d'ara*), **from now on** (*d'ara endavant*), **right now** (*ara mateix*) and **until now** (*fins ara*, but see the comments above concerning the distinction between **until now** and **so far**). Examples:

**If he hasn't gotten [AmE] here by now, he isn't coming.**

**From now on we'll do the class in English.**

**Do it right now!**

**These problems were caused by a server failure which had not been detected until now.**

**Then** – *aleshores, en aquell temps* (initial or final position)

**Then, when I was about twenty, I began to try my luck with editors.**

**There was no TV then.**

Note also the expression **then and there** (*en aquell precís moment, immediatament*).

**I decided then and there to become a doctor.**

**Today, nowadays** – *avui, avui dia*

**The boss won't be in today.**

**Most cars sold today (nowadays) are front-wheel drive.**

**People travel a lot nowadays.**

**Tomorrow** – *demà*

**I don't think I'll be able to pay you tomorrow.**

**We'll have to finish the job tomorrow.**

We should also mention the expressions **the day after** and **the next day** (*l'endemà*). Examples:

**They aren't getting here till the day after tomorrow.**

**In England, the day after Christmas is Boxing Day.**

**The next day was cold and windy.**

**Tonight** – *aquesta nit*

**We'll probably see them later tonight.**

**We're leaving for the coast tonight.**

**Yesterday** – *ahir*

**Joan didn't come to class yesterday.**

**Yesterday, all my troubles seemed so far away.**

Note too the expression **the day before yesterday** (*abans-d'ahir*). For example:

**She had her knee operation the day before yesterday.**

## 6.5. Adverbs of affirmation and doubt

Adverbs of affirmation and doubt are used to provide more information on the certainty or uncertainty of statements.

### 6.5.1. Adverbs of affirmation

As in CATALAN, in English adverbs of affirmation are used to indicate or emphasize that a statement is true. The most common, of course, is **yes**. As for the others, it is important to remember that those that go in central position almost always precede a negative contraction. Example:

**We definitely haven't done anything to be ashamed of.**

The following is a table of some of the most common affirmative adverbs.

<b>certainly</b> [central] – <i>certament</i> <b>definitely</b> [central] – <i>certament</i> <b>for sure</b> (colloquial) [initial, final] – <i>sens dubte</i> <b>indeed</b> [initial, final] – <i>en efecte</i>	<b>probably</b> [central] – <i>probablement</i> <b>really</b> [central] – <i>en realitat, de debò</i> <b>surely</b> [central, initial] – <i>segurament</i> <b>undoubtedly</b> [central] – <i>sens dubte</i>
---	--

Examples:

**There are three things I know for sure about teaching English.**

**Indeed, the classroom has not changed over the last one hundred years.**

**Most people will probably stay home.**

**The government was really directed from London.**

When expressing surprise, the CATALAN expression *Ah, sí?*, meaning *De debò?* is normally translated **Really?** Example:

**"John's asked Mary to marry him." "Really?"**

### 6.5.2. Adverbs of doubt

Adverbs of doubt express negativity or uncertainty. Here is a list of some of the most important of these adverbs.



<b>apparently</b> [central, initial] – <i>pel que sembla</i> <b>maybe</b> [initial] – <i>potser</i> <b>perhaps</b> [initial] – <i>potser</i>	<b>possibly</b> [initial] – <i>possiblement</i> <b>seemingly</b> [central] – <i>aparentment</i>
--	--

Examples:

**Maybe/Perhaps they got lost.**  
**I couldn't possibly have had better care.**  
**They were seemingly identical.**

## 6.6. Adverbs of degree

We have already studied the adverbs **too**, **very**, **quite** and **enough** in section Sy 2.3. The following table lists other important adverbs of degree. They all go in a central position.

Examples:

<b>almost</b> – <i>gairebé, quasi</i> <b>barely</b> – <i>amb prou feines</i> <b>completely</b> – <i>completament</i> <b>extremely</b> – <i>extremadament</i> <b>fairly</b> – <i>bastant, força</i>	<b>hardly</b> – <i>amb prou feines</i> <b>nearly</b> – <i>gairebé</i> <b>pretty</b> – <i>bastant, força</i> <b>rather</b> – <i>bastant, força</i> <b>scarcely</b> – <i>amb prou feines</i>
--	--

**We're almost there!**  
**We had barely/hardly/scarcely begun when it started to rain.**  
**She was extremely displeased.**  
**The work was fairly/pretty/rather easy.**

## 6.7. Interrogative adverbs

For a study of the interrogative English adverbs **when**, **where**, **why** and **how**, see section Sy 5.4.

## 6.8. Conjunctive adverbs

Conjunctive adverbs, as their name implies, act very much like conjunctions. They generally appear in initial position (unless otherwise noted) and are sometimes followed by a comma. Here is a list of some of the most common along with an example of each.

**All the same, even so** – *tanmateix, no obstant això*

**We'd never met, but all the same/even so, I felt I'd known him all my life.**

**Altogether, all in all** – *en conjunt, fet i fet*

**The hotel is a bit smaller than we'd hoped but all in all we're quite pleased.**  
**All in all, we'd be better off waiting in the car.**

**Anyway** – *malgrat això, de tota manera*

The adverb **anyway** goes in final position when it means *malgrat això*, and in initial position when it means *de tota manera*.

**You may not like it, but do it anyway.**

**I don't know what happened to your money; anyway, it's gone.**

**Anyway, those of you who prefer to work from home can do so.**

**At any rate, in any event** – *de tota manera*

**At any rate/In any event, it doesn't hurt to check it out.**

**At least, at any rate, anyway** – *com a mínim, si més no, de tota manera*

**I think the children are finally asleep; at least/at any rate/anyway, they're quiet.**

**At any rate, it is still not very clear how emotions are reflected in EEG patterns.**

**For example, for instance** – *per exemple*

**For example, say "I speak English well", not "I speak well English".**

**However** – *tanmateix, no obstant això*

The adverb **however** can also appear in central position, separated by commas.

**However, we understand that not everybody agrees or We understand, however, that not everybody agrees.**

**In other words, that is (to say)** – *és a dir*

**Those units that do not appear often in the set of documents will have more weight, that is, will be more representative of the full set of documents.**

**Nevertheless, nonetheless** – *tanmateix, no obstant això*

The adverbs **nevertheless** and **nonetheless** can appear in any position, with or without commas.

**Though we disliked each other, nevertheless/nonetheless we agreed.**

**Say what you will, we must nevertheless/nonetheless go forward.**

**Nevertheless/nonetheless, when we consider all the elements, we can single out the environment as key.**

**The mines were modern but dangerous, nevertheless/nonetheless.**

**Now then, that said** – *ara bé*

**The results were unexpected; now then/that said, the experiment wasn't a failure.**

**On the other hand** – *d'altra banda, però*

**These systems have to guarantee their independence, and, on the other hand, be able to show information in multiple formats.**

**Otherwise** – *altrament, si no*

**I'm glad you accompanied me; otherwise I wouldn't have come.**

**Still, all the same** – *tanmateix, no obstant això*

**It is dangerous; still/all the same, I want to go.**

Then – *doncs*

Is it raining? Then don't go out.

Therefore, thus – *per tant*

A is equal to B and B is equal to C; therefore, A is equal to C.

Though – *tanmateix, no obstant això, però*

The adverb **though** normally appears in final position.

This is not the only new development though.

## 6.9. Adverbs modifying adjectives or other adverbs

Although an adverb usually modifies a verb, there are cases in which it modifies other grammatical categories. In this section we will study three important cases of this.

### Adverbs modifying adjectives

The most common cases of adverbs modifying adjectives are those of amplifying adverbs, which reinforce the sense of the adjective, and reducing adverbs, which lessen the sense of the adjective. Note that many of these can also be considered adverbs of degree, which we looked at in section Sy 2.4. Here are some examples of the most common adverbs in each category.

#### Amplifying adverbs

I'm very/really/awfully sorry you can't come.

Esther was deeply concerned about the safety of the climb.

This product is entirely free of chemical additives.

Their company has a highly skilled staff.

His wife was sharply critical of his behaviour.

The benefactors wish to remain totally anonymous.

#### Reducing adverbs

The movie was a bit/a little dull.

His words were barely/hardly/scarcely intelligible.

The boat was relatively small.

The adverbs **fairly**, **rather** and **pretty** all mean *bastant/força*; **fairly** is generally used to express a positive quality (eg **He's fairly intelligent**), **rather** generally modifies a negative quality (eg **The room was rather warm**) and **pretty**, the least formal of the three, can be used in both cases: **He's pretty intelligent** and **The room was pretty warm**. Note too that the adverb **quite** can have both an amplifying and reducing sense. Examples:

**You're quite right.**

*Tens tota la raó.*

**Your paper isn't quite good enough.**

*El teu treball no és prou bo.*

### Adverbs modifying other adverbs

As in the case of adverbs modifying adjectives, adverbs that modify other adverbs can be either amplifying or reducing. Examples:

You've come too/very soon.

Your son plays the violin surprisingly well.

He recovered from the accident fairly/pretty/rather quickly.

### Adverbs modifying other grammatical categories

There are three main cases in which adverbs can modify other grammatical categories:

Reducing adverbs can modify indefinite pronouns and the adjectives associated with them.

Adverbs that express approximation, such as **about**, **around** and **roughly**, can modify time and quantity expressions, as well as certain subordinate clauses.

The adverbs **over** and **under** (*més de* and *menys de*) can modify quantity expressions.

Examples:

Almost everybody in this town has a dog.

Nearly all/half the women left early.

It rains so much there's virtually no air pollution.

We got home about/around six in the morning.

The company paid him roughly double the amount he expected.

I have saved up over two thousand euros.

There were under ten thousand shares sold.

## 7. Prepositions

The first three subsections of this section will examine prepositions of place, time and movement. Although prepositions can have other meanings – indicating, for example, subject matter (a song **about** love), an object (to shoot **at** someone) or a means (to travel **on** foot), to deal with every possible meaning of every preposition is beyond the scope of this guide, and we consider these three categories to be the most significant. Remember too that we have already studied prepositional verbs in section Sy 5.8.

Finally keep in mind that, whereas CATALAN uses the infinitive as a prepositional complement, English uses the gerund (see Sy 5.11.).

### 7.1. Prepositions of place

Prepositions of place, as their name implies, are used to refer to either the place an object or person is located (eg John is **in** the kitchen), or the relation this position has with some other object or person (John is standing **behind** Judith). Keep in mind that many of these prepositions can also be used to refer to both temporal relations (see Sy 7.2.) and to movement (see section Sy 7.3.).

**At, in, on, inside, outside, within**

When referring to the place a person or thing is located, the prepositions **at**, **in** and **on** can all be translated in CATALAN by *a*. Obviously this can cause confusions, which we will try to clear up with the following summary.

**At** – *a* (public buildings, commercial establishments)

**In** – *a* (enclosed or delimited spaces [rooms, etc.]; toponyms [countries, etc.]; water)

**On** – *a, per* (surfaces [table, ceiling, floor, etc.]; areas with no limits; small islands)

Examples:

**They're at the theatre.**

**We met some friends of ours at the bakery.**

**The children are in the house.**

**They met in London.**

**There's a stain on the ceiling.**

**We walked on the beach.**

**We spent our vacation on Menorca.**

Note too the following related prepositions of place.

**Inside** – *dins, a la part interior*

**Inside the house everything appeared to be undisturbed.**

**Outside** – *fora, a la part exterior*

**I live outside the city.**

**Within** – *dins, no més lluny de*

**We need more leadership within the school.**

**He planted the firs within twenty feet of the house.**

**Among and between**

**Among** – *entre* (many)

**Between** – *entre* (generally two)

The preposition **between** describes the relation between two objects or people, or a relation between many when considered one by one. The preposition **among** is always applied to more than two objects or people, without distinguishing them individually. Examples:

**Andorra lies between Spain and France.**

**I sit between Mar and Doris.**

**Between golf, band practice and giving classes, I have no time for reading.**

**The interviews lasted between 45 and 60 minutes.**

**There were no men among the survivors.**

**We were able to observe deer among the trees.**

### Above, below, over, under, on, on top of

Higher than	Lower than
Above – <i>sobre, damunt de</i>	Below – <i>sota, davall de</i>
Over – <i>sobre, damunt de</i>	Under – <i>sota, davall de</i>
On – <i>sobre, damunt de</i>	
On top of – <i>sobre, damunt de</i>	

The prepositional pairs **above** and **below**, and **over** and **under**, are used to describe a person or thing that occupies a position higher or lower in altitude than another. They also imply that there is no point of contact between the two elements. In contrast, **on** and **on top of** both imply that there is contact, the latter more specifically indicating a point of contact at the highest point of some object. Note too that **below** is used more when referring to surfaces and body parts (eg **below the water**, **below the knee**); otherwise, its use is less common than that of **under**. Examples:

**The lamp hangs above/over the table.**

**A man was sitting on the table.**

**The suitcase is on top of the wardrobe.**

**The dog is sleeping under (not ~~below~~) the table.**

**No hitting below the belt.**

The prepositions **over** and **under** have a tendency to indicate that there is a more or less vertical relation between the two elements. So, for example, it is more common to say **the hills above (not over) the town** (*les muntanyetes sobre el poble*) or **the bridge is 100 metres below (not under) the pass** (*el pont és a 100 metres sota el coll*).

Both **over** and **under** can also imply movement from one side to another, whereas **above** and **below** don't. Thus, **The bird flew over the mountain** (*L'ocell travessava la muntanya volant*) and **The rabbit burrowed under the fence** (*El conill travessava la tanca soscavant*).

**Beneath** and **underneath** are used less frequently as synonyms of **under**.

### Across, ahead of, behind, in back of, in front of, opposite

**Across** – *a l'altre costat de; arreu de*

**Ahead of** – *davant de*

**Behind** – *darrere de*

**In back of** – *darrere de*

**In front of** – *davant de*

**Opposite** – *davant de*

Examples:

**They live across the street from us.**

**At markets across America, people are searching for healthy food.**

**We saw the glow of their taillights ahead of us.**

**I'm standing behind (in back of [AmE]) Mary.**

**Two women were working behind the bar.**

**The swings are in front of the house.**

**She likes to stand in front of the mirror.**

**She was sitting opposite you at dinner.**

**Beside, by, close to, near, next to**

**Beside** – *al costat de*

**By** – *al costat de, prop de*

**Close to** – *prop de*

**Near** – *prop de*

**Next to** – *al costat de*

The students had a picnic beside the river.

The old woman wished to be buried by her husband.

Cut the stem as close to the ground as you can.

We want to live near the sea.

The house next to mine sold for two hundred thousand pounds.

**Along, around, beyond, past**

**Along** – *al llarg de*

**Around** – *al voltant de, arreu de, tombant*

**Beyond** – *més enllà de*

**Past** – *(més) enllà de, després de*

Plane trees had been planted along the highway.

They sat around the fire.

Images were beamed around the world.

Their house is beyond those fields.

They live three houses past the butcher's.

**Other compound prepositions**

**At/in/on the back of** – *al darrere de*

He was sitting at/in the back of the room.

We put the camera in the back of the car.

Write down your number on the back of this card.

**At/in/on the front of** – *a la part davantera*

The dining room was at the front of the house.

There was a TV in the front of the bus.

I wrote my address on the front of the envelope.

**At the top of** – *a dalt de*

They were hiding at the top of the stairs.

**At the bottom of** – *al fons de*

There's a lot of crud at the bottom of my bag.

**7.2. Prepositions of time**

**After** – *després de (més tard)*

We can meet after class.

After twenty years in the country he still hadn't learned the language.

**At** – *a, per*

**Six is too early for me; can I come at seven?**

**He started smoking at an early age.**

Note too the following expressions.

**at dawn, at sunrise, at noon, at dusk/twilight, at sunset, at night, at midnight**

**Before** – *abans de*

**Alice got home before ten o'clock.**

**A cure may be discovered before long.**

**Between** – *entre*

**Where were you on Friday night between eleven and midnight?**

**By** – *no més tard que, per*

**He was usually home by five.**

Also: **by day** and **by night** (*de dia, de nit*). Example:

**Some truckers like to drive by night and others, by day.**

**During** – *durant*

Note that it is not possible to use **during** before a quantitative term: that is, we can say **during the summer** (*durant l'estiu*), but not ~~**during three months**~~ (*durant tres setmanes*). In this latter case we say **for three months**.

**My elder brother was born during a thunderstorm.**

**Services closed during the holidays.**

**For** – *durant, des de fa, per*

**They stayed there for three days.**

**We've been here for an hour.**

**I'm not leaving for an hour**

**I'll lend you my bicycle for three days.**

**In** – *en, per, a*

If the time period is greater or less than a day, English usually uses **in**; for the day itself, we use **on** (see below).

**It was finished in a year.**

**I'm leaving in a year**

**He doesn't do shows in summer.**

**The third term is scheduled to start in September.**

The combination **in** + time period can also be used to translate the CATALAN expression *d'aquí a* + time period: eg **in two days** = *d'aquí a dos dies*.

**On** – *a*

Note that in its temporal sense, the preposition **on** is only used for days.

**I was born on June 20.**

**We met on Christmas day.**

**Life seems better on a sunny day.**



**Over** – *més de, durant, per*

He spent over three years writing his memoirs.

He worked here over the summer.

I hope to get a lot of work done over the Christmas holidays.

**Past** – *després de, més tard que*

It's twenty past ten.

We didn't get home till past midnight.

**Since** – *des de*

We've been here since four-thirty.

Since its start, over a hundred people have studied the courses.

**Through** – *a, durant*

We meet every day, from Monday through Friday.

Our guests will be staying through Easter.

**Throughout** – *al llarg de*

Throughout his life the doctor had always tried to help others.

**To** – *a, fins a*

It's already a quarter to nine.

I'll be home this evening from seven to nine.

We enjoyed the whole show, from beginning to end.

**Towards** – *pels volts de, cap a*

The fog began to lift towards noon.

Towards the end of the century, Romanticism made a come-back.

**Until** – *fins (a)*

The documents will not be available until September.

**Within** – *en menys de, dins de*

Document archiving is to take place within 12 months.

### 7.3. Prepositions of movement

**About** – *arreu de, per*

The tourists wandered about the town.

**Across** – *travessant, de l'un costat a l'altre*

We took a train journey across Siberia.

**Along** – *per*

The system incorporates the routes followed by vehicles along unmapped roads.

**Down** – *cap avall*

He walked/ran/drove down the road.

**In – a**

He walked in the room. (AmE)

**Into – a**

He walked into the room.

The water was running down the stairs and into the kitchen.

These trends will influence investors to expand their operations into the Indian market.

**Off – de** (indicating separation)

He fell off his bike.

Without her phone, she was cut off from the rest of the world.

**On – sobre, a**

They loaded their baggage on the cart. (AmE)

**Onto – sobre, a**

They loaded their baggage onto the trolley. (BrE)

**Out of – (fora) de**

He pulled the kittens out of the box.

The skydivers jumped out of the plane too soon.

She walked/ran out of the room.

**Over – per sobre (d'un costat a l'altre)**

Joan leaped over the bonfire.

**Past – per davant de**

She walked past me and didn't say a word.

**Through – per, a través de, per mitjà de**

The card will be sent through the post to the address detailed here.

Light passes through the windowpanes.

**To – a, en, fins a**

The move to Barcelona means the documents will not be available until September.

When we got to this little town, we started trying to find a place to sleep.

I drove her to the foot of the mountain.

**Towards (also toward) – cap a**

We are moving towards bringing the two research centres under the same roof.

**Under – sota, per sota de**

This is an important step towards bringing the two research centres under the same roof.

**Up – cap amunt**

He walked/ran/drove up the road.

#### 7.4. Placement of prepositions

In English, prepositional phrases generally come after the verb or its complement, if there is one. In most cases this is the only possible position. Examples:

**There is a checkbox to the left of each journal title.**

**They are all experts in their fields.**

**One of the distinctive features is how students are helped along the entire process.**

It's important to remember not to put prepositional phrases between a verb and its complement, as sometimes occurs in CATALAN. Example:

**They put three apples in the basket** (not ~~They put in the basket three apples~~).

That said, there are four cases in which the prepositional complement precedes the preposition, which is put after the verb or verb complement. In the following examples, we'll underline the preposition and double underline its complement.

In interrogations

Who did you go with?

What are you talking about?

Where do they come from?

When accompanied by relative pronouns (see Sy 4.4.1.)

The scientific journals (that) you are interested in have arrived.

The data (that) they work with is confidential.

His mother, who he'd looked after for years, died yesterday.

In passive expressions

The first 10 requests made by students will not be charged for.

I don't like getting shot at.

The judge he was brought before is very strict.

When an adjective is complemented by a clause headed by an infinitive

My boss is very easy to work for.

Your dogs are fun to play with.

This neighbourhood isn't safe to walk in at night.

## 8. Conjunctions

Conjunctions connect words, clauses or sentences together: for example, **and**, **but** or **if**. The following section examines their use in English.

### 8.1. Coordinating conjunctions

Before studying the coordinating conjunctions themselves, we should observe that English can eliminate the second subject in coordinated expressions linked by **and**, **but** and **yet** if the two expressions are complete sentences and share the same subject. Examples:

**It also studies the steps that have to be followed and indicates its weak points.**  
**He knew the answer but didn't tell her.**  
**She knew she was in danger, yet refused to move.**

**And – *i***

**The street was long and narrow.**  
**It's raining and snowing.**  
**They provide information on current affairs and show trends in public opinion.**

**But – *sinó, però***

**The interview's questions were generally open but followed a pattern.**  
**It wasn't in Reus, but Tarragona.**  
**He's a good boy, but he doesn't study much.**  
**There are increasingly more internet users, but government surveillance is growing.**

**For – *ja que, perquè***

The conjunction **for** is generally only used in formal contexts.

**Hearing the song affected me deeply, for it had been my mother's favourite.**

**Nor – *ni***

**The vast majority of adolescents say that videogames do not limit, nor are they a substitute for, their usual social life.**  
**No commercial use can be made of the original work, nor can derivative works be produced.**

**Or – *o***

**You can go back to any of the screens and change or revise your entry without losing any data.**  
**Hurry up, or else we'll miss the train.**  
**Professionals are interested in undertaking innovation projects or finding new jobs in a dynamic new environment.**

**So – *per tant, doncs***

Note that the word **so** is also used in consecutive expressions (eg **so big that**, **so much work that**, etc.; see section Sy 2.3.).

**It started to rain, so we left early.**  
**This information will allow users to retrieve your document, so we recommend that you provide all applicable data.**  
**Currently, you do not form part of any group, so no information can be shown.**

**Yet** – *tanmateix, no obstant això, però*

Note that **yet** is also a time adverb (*ja* question and *encara* negative; see section Sy 6.4.).

**You've got all the money you want, and yet you don't use it.**

**Machines are neither creative nor trusting, yet in our daily lives, we are increasingly in their hands.**

**He was a stern yet fair master.**

## 8.2. Correlative conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions link balanced words and expressions. In English, the following five are the most important.

**Both... and** – *tant... com*

**Both my mother and yours were born in California.**

**It was a masterpiece, both for style and content.**

Note that, because of the inherent dual nature of the word **both**, the construction **both... and** is limited to describing two entities. If three entities are mentioned, other expressions must be used. Example:

**Both the students and teachers, as well as the parents, laughed a lot.**

**Either... or** – *o... o*

**Either he didn't tell me or I've forgotten.**

**Decide: either one or the other.**

**We must either go forward, stay where we are or retreat.**

**Neither... nor** – *ni... ni*

**They have neither the land nor the means to develop modern operations.**

**He neither smiled nor spoke nor looked at me.**

**Not only... but** – *no solament... sinó*

**It's not only legal, but also necessary.**

**He not only drinks too much, but he tries to hide it.**

**What is intended is not only to evaluate a specific website, but also to establish a series of guidelines.**

**Whether... or** – *tant si... com*

**Whether we go by bus or train, it will take us at least three hours.**

**You'll have to pay the full price whether you leave this evening or stay until tomorrow morning.**

## 8.3. Subordinating conjunctions

### Causal conjunctions

**As** – *com que*

**As you didn't show up, I left.**

**As the journal focuses on library services, it is of great interest to librarians.**

**As we'd done our homework, the test presented no special difficulties.**

Note that the conjunction **as** is also a temporal conjunction, with the meaning of *mentre*.

Note too that the compound conjunction **as long as**, apart from its conditional sense, is sometimes used to express cause. Compare the following sentences.

Conditional: **We'll be fine as long as we follow the map.**

*Anirem bé (mentre/sempre que) seguim el mapa.*

**Because – perquè**

**They pay me more because I work more.**

**Around 70% of students choose the UOC because it lets them manage their time.**

**We can't turn down his help, because otherwise he would be offended.**

Note too the expression **because of**, translated in CATALAN by *a causa de*. For example:

**During my career, I've seen too many projects fail because of a lack of attention to change management principles.**

*Al llarg de la meua carrera, he vist fracassar molts projectes a causa de la manca d'atenció als principis de gestió del canvi.*

**Since – com que, atès que**

Note that the conjunction **since** is also a temporal conjunction, with the meaning of *des que* (see the entry for **since** in the discussion of conjunctions of time below).

**Since the government refuses to take action, the criminals have gone unpunished.**

**Since systems administration is a very broad-ranging field, this manual only seeks to be an introduction to this passionate world.**

**Concessive conjunctions**

**Although, though, even though – tot i que**

**Although we had the same ideas, we sometimes argued.**

**Even though it's raining, I still want to go out.**

Note that these three concessive conjunctions can also be translated by *encara que* when this CATALAN conjunction is followed by the indicative. (*Encara que* is translated **even if** when followed by a subjunctive expression; see below.) Example:

**Even though it's your first concert, you've sung very well.**

*Encara que és el primer concert heu cantat molt bé.*

**Even if – encara que (plus subjunctive)**

**Even if we run, we'll miss the train.**

*Encara que correguem, perdrem el tren.*

**Even if we ran, we'd miss the train.**

*Encara que correguéssim, perdríem el tren.*

**Even if we had run, we would have missed the train.**

*Encara que haguéssim corregut, hauríem perdut el tren.*

**We're going to do it even if you oppose us.**

*Ho farem encara que t'hi oposis.*

**If not – si no**

**She's as fast as her sister, if not faster.**

**Her salary was good, if not up to her expectations.**

**Whereas – *mentre que***

They believe that women are emotional, **whereas** men are rational.  
Individual responsibility is mentioned four times, **whereas** legislation is only mentioned once.

**While – *tot i que; mentre que***

The concessive conjunction **while** is synonymous with **although** (*tot i que*) when it appears at the beginning of a sentence and is a synonym of **whereas** (*mentre que*) when it appears after the main clause. Examples:

**While (Although) I admire your goals, I abhor your methods.**  
**The total number of users stands at 8,362, while (whereas) the total number of visits was 10,879.**

However, it is good to keep in mind that the most important use of the conjunction **while** is temporal (see below), with the meaning of *mentre*, and therefore the use of **while** should be avoided when ambiguity might otherwise result. For example:

**While they were still collecting the data, she started writing the report**  
**I work, while you have fun.**

When the sense is concessive, these two sentences would be better expressed using **although** and **whereas**, respectively:

**Although they were still collecting the data, she started writing the report.**  
**I work, whereas you have fun.**

**Conditional conjunctions****As long as – *sempre que, mentre***

**We'll go there tomorrow, as long as it doesn't rain.**  
**As long as there are computers, there will be malicious viruses.**

**If – *si* (see also section Sy 8.5.)**

**If you want to learn English, you have to study.**  
**If you click on the link, you will be taken to the homepage.**

**In case – *en cas que***

**In case you haven't read the article, we'll reprint it here.**  
**What should be done in case there were an accident?**

Note also the expression **just in case** (*per si de cas*):

**I'll bring along an umbrella, just in case.**

**Unless – *llevat que***

**We never go there unless we're invited.**  
**We are headed for catastrophe unless we change our economic system.**

**Conjunctions of purpose****So that, in order that – *per tal que/perquè* plus subjunctive**

Note that the conjunction **in order that** is generally limited to formal use.

**They pay me more so that I'll work more.**

*Em paguen més perquè (per tal que) treballi més.*

**I said this so that no one would be able to doubt my good will.**

*Ho vaig dir perquè (per tal que) ningú no pogués dubtar de la meva bona voluntat.*

**We can carry out feasibility studies in order that the properties of the software be accurately evaluated prior to its acquisition.**

*Podem dur a terme estudis de factibilitat per tal que es valorin acuradament les propietats del programari abans d'adquirir-lo.*

### Conjunctions of time

**After** – *després que*

**I don't want to leave until after they've come back.**

**He had to drop out of the race after his car broke down.**

**As** – *quan*

The basic difference between the synonyms **as** and **while** is that **while** applies to longer periods of time and **as** to shorter. **As** is used when talking about two simultaneous changes, whereas **while** tends to be used more often when the main clause is in the present tense and the subordinate in the future (see the entry for **while** further below).

**He came in as (not ~~while~~) I was leaving.**

**As (not ~~while~~) we get older, our bodies change.**

**Before** – *abans que*

**They knew how to swim before they could walk.**

**Let's stop this war before it begins.**

**Since** – *des que*

**The educational model has been the hallmark of the university since it began.**

**Zoe has known Carla since they were in school together.**

Remember that the conjunction **since** can also be used as a causal conjunction (see above). To avoid confusions, if the temporal **since** is used at the beginning of a sentence, it is usually expressed **ever since**.

**Ever since we got rid of the TV, our conversations have been getting more and more interesting.**

**Until, till** – *fins que*

**Wait until I get back.**

**You cannot collect it until you have received notification by email.**

**When** – *quan*

**I learned to ride when I was a child.**

**We'll tell him when he comes.**

**While** – *mentre*

Remember that, in contrast to its synonym **as** (see above), **while** is used for lengthy periods of time. It is also more often used when the main clause is in the present tense and the subordinate in the future.



**While (not *As*) I was living in Vic, my sister was studying in Girona.**  
**They broke into my house while (not *as*) I was on vacation.**  
**While (not *As*) you pluck the chicken, I'll light the fire.**

That said, in many cases **as** and **while** are completely synonymous. Examples:

**While/As I was walking to work I saw a terrible accident.**  
**While/As she was cooking dinner we heard an explosion.**

#### 8.4. The conjunction *that*

The conjunction **that** corresponds to the CATALAN conjunction *que*. An important difference, however, is that English can in some cases omit the conjunction. Broadly speaking, the briefer and more colloquial the expression, the more likely it is that the conjunction will be omitted. That said, there are certain cases in which the sentence might sound ambiguous without the conjunction. Generally speaking, it is probably safer to always include the conjunction (given that it is never wrong), except in very brief, colloquial expressions.

In the following examples we will put the conjunction **that** in parentheses when we consider that its use is optional.

**It's funny (that) they haven't said anything about it.**  
**It isn't fair that a man be paid more than a woman for the same work.**  
**My feeling is (that) we should forget about it.**  
**Another of the conclusions was that the current crisis represents an opportunity.**  
**He said (that) he was tired.**  
**Our lawyer insisted (that) father be released.**  
**The paper alleges that misguided social reforms have disrupted family life.**  
**I'm really happy (that) you've come.**  
**Galileo was afraid that the Church's reputation would be damaged if they rejected Copernicanism.**  
**The fear that the enemy would attack made them flee.**  
**Do you agree with Freud's view that neuroses are caused by sexual factors?**

#### 8.5. The conjunctions *if* and *whether*

Remember first that we have studied the conditional conjunction **if** (*si*) and the concessive expression **if not** (*si no*) in section Sy 8.3.

Apart from these uses, the conjunction **if** is also used to express uncertainty and questions, cases in which it is often synonymous with the conjunction **whether**. However, there are two or three important contexts in which **whether** must be used, and it is important to keep them in mind because CATALAN does not make this distinction.

Finally, **if** is used in a number of idiomatic expressions that we will study below.

##### ***If* and *whether* expressing uncertainty or interrogation**

Broadly speaking, the use of **if** or **whether** is optional when introducing expressions of uncertainty or interrogation; in general, **whether** is a bit more formal. Here are some colloquial examples in which the use of **if** would probably be more likely:

Ask him if he knows anything about it.  
 Do you remember if she was afraid of him?  
 I don't know if I'll ever be able to forget it.

Here are some examples in which both **whether** and **if** would sound perfectly natural:

I wonder whether/if she's got any sisters.  
 I asked her whether/if she'd like to see a film.  
 We'll soon learn whether/if it is true.  
 I really doubt whether/if they told you the whole story.

That said, the use of **whether** is obligatory in the following cases.

After prepositions

It depends on whether (not **if**) we can get a loan.  
 They quarrelled about whether (not **if**) he should have the operation or not.

Before infinitives

We didn't know whether (not **if**) to laugh or cry.  
 Have you decided whether (not **if**) to call the police?

After the verb **discuss**

We were discussing whether (not **if**) we should buy new drapes.

Finally, many stylists consider the use of **whether** to be preferable when two or more alternatives are presented:

We haven't decided whether we are going to cut staff or reduce other costs.  
 I couldn't tell whether they were sleeping, dozing or just lying there.

**Idiomatic expressions using *if***

**if only** – *tant de bo*

Note that **if only** is almost always used to express resignation, that is, acceptance of something considered impossible to change (eg **If only you were younger** = *Tant de bo que fossis més jove*). Note that the verb is used in the past simple tense. When the speaker considers that there is a possibility that the desire be completed, the use of **wish** in the **would** form is more common (eg **I wish you would drive slower** = *Tant de bo que conduïssis més a poc a poc*). More examples:

**If only you were here with me!**  
*Tant de bo que fossis aquí amb mi!*  
**If only we hadn't spoken without thinking!**  
*Tant de bo que no haguéssim parlat sense pensar!*

The following expressions have no exact equivalent in CATALAN, but their meanings are not difficult to discern.

**What or little, if anything**

**What, if anything, is wrong with our schools?**  
*Què va malament en les nostres escoles, si és que hi va res?*  
**There was little, if anything, anybody could do.**  
*Hi havia poca cosa que algú pogués fer, si és que hi havia res a fer.*

**Who, if anyone**

**Who, if anyone, deserves a statue?**

*Qui mereix una estàtua, posat que hi hagi algú que la mereixi?*

**Few/little, if any**

**There are few, if any, benefits to totalitarian government.**

*Hi ha pocs beneficis en els governs totalitaris, si és que n'hi ha.*

**I have little, if any, interest in the matter.**

*L'assumpte m'interessa poc, suposant que m'interessi una mica.*

**Seldom/rarely, if ever**

**Most students had seldom, if ever, used a computer.**

*La majoria dels alumnes no havia fet servir gaire un ordinador, si és que n'havien fet servir mai cap.*

**Usually, if not always**

**They are usually, if not always, in bed by ten.**

*Si no sempre, normalment són al llit abans de les deu.*

Finally, we should mention the negative declaration **if anything**.

**She didn't seem surprised to me; if anything, she seemed rather blasé.**

*A mi ella no em semblava sorpresa; de fet, semblava força indiferent.*

# Practical Guide to English Usage

## Style

This section of the guide offers an overview of the UOC's preferences on a range of English-language style issues. The goal is to provide authors, translators, editors and proofreaders working in English with a set of guidelines to ensure linguistic and stylistic consistency within and across the texts produced in connection with the University. In short, the goal is to define the UOC's house style for texts in English, not to serve as the ultimate arbiter on all matters of style and usage.

To accomplish this goal, this section of the guide addresses some of the most common style issues to come up in the context of UOC-related texts. To facilitate comparisons, it does so in roughly the same order as they are addressed in the UOC's Catalan-language guide and offers explicit examples where the two languages differ. For more in-depth explanations of specific grammatical points in English, please see the relevant section earlier in this guide.

For ease of reference and use, this section has been divided into subsections that can be consulted individually or read straight through. Once again, care has been taken to choose examples from UOC texts so as best to illustrate the types of situations language professionals may encounter and how they have been resolved in the past.

In conclusion, a final word of warning: while the following sections lay out the UOC's general preferences, the overriding criteria for any given text must always be consistency, clarity, respect for the author's intentions and overall readability. Language professionals must thus use their best judgement when deciding whether to make exceptions to these rules.

## 1. Abbreviations, acronyms and symbols

Abbreviations, acronyms and symbols save space and prevent unwieldy repetitions. However, when used indiscriminately, they can confuse the reader and lead to distracting inconsistencies in a text. Therefore, when introducing an unfamiliar abbreviation or acronym, it is generally a good idea to use the full term on first mention, followed by the abbreviation or acronym to be used thereafter in parentheses. Likewise, in documents with many abbreviations, acronyms and/or symbols, it is worth considering including a key at the start or end.

Additionally, the UOC recommends the following guidelines.

### 1.1. Abbreviations

Abbreviations are generally used to save space. They are thus quite useful for programmes, agendas, invoices and other documents with non-standard formats in which space is a concern. In contrast, they should be used sparingly in the body of a text. For example, it is not necessary to abbreviate terms that appear only once.

Abbreviations can be classified into two groups: truncations and contractions. Truncations omit the end of a word (and sometimes other letters, too), while contractions omit letters from the middle. In BrE, truncations take a full stop, whereas contractions do not. Examples:

Truncations: **Prof.** (Professor), **Jan.** (January), **art.** (article), **cf.** (*confer*)

Contractions: **Dr** (Doctor), **Mr** (Mister), **Ltd** (Limited)

#### Plurals

Abbreviations generally form their plurals by adding a final lowercase **s**. Note that the plural of a truncated word is still considered a truncation and thus still takes a full stop. Examples:

**arts.** (articles)

**figs.** (figures)

**Drs** (Doctors)

Some common exceptions to this rule include:

**p.** → **pp.** (page/pages)

**Mr** → **Messrs** (Mister/Misters)

**Mrs** → **Mmes** (Mistress/Mesdames)

**PS** → **PPS** (postscript/post-postscript)

#### Proper names

Follow each initial in a person's name with a full stop and a space. Examples:

**D. W. Griffith**

**J. P. Morgan**

#### Ordinal numbers

Although full stops may be used with the abbreviations of ordinal numbers in CATALAN (eg **1<sup>r</sup>**, **2<sup>n</sup>**), they are not used with such abbreviations in English. Thus: **1st**, **2nd**, etc.

Please note that, for formatting reasons, the UOC prefers that the suffixes for ordinal numbers not be written in superscript.

## 1.2. Acronyms

Like abbreviations, acronyms are used to save space. Unlike abbreviations, they are often used within the body of a text to reduce repetition and improve flow. That said, too many acronyms can turn a text into an alphabet soup, which can be taxing and distracting for the reader. It is thus a good idea to use unfamiliar acronyms sparingly, particularly in texts that already include a generous helping of familiar ones or when what they stand for is mentioned only once. Instead, write out the full term on first mention and, where applicable, use a shorter version thereafter. For example:

**Another highlight was the official recognition of several UOC research groups by the Catalan University and Research Grant Management Agency. The agency thus recognizes the groups' potential and...**

To ensure clarity and consistency, when you do use an acronym, use the full term on first mention, followed by the acronym to be used thereafter in parentheses. On subsequent mention, use only the acronym.

**Another highlight was the official recognition of several UOC research groups by the Catalan University and Research Grant Management Agency (AGAUR). AGAUR thus recognizes the groups' potential and...**

Notwithstanding the above, acronyms that are common knowledge may be used directly without additional clarification. Examples:

**EU**  
**FBI**  
**UN**

### Acronyms vs initialisms

For certain formatting questions, it can be helpful to distinguish between acronyms and initialisms. Acronyms are formed from the first or first few letters of each of the words they are based on. They are pronounced as a word and do not take full stops or spaces. They are generally uppercased in full if 5 or fewer letters long and take only an initial cap if 6 or more letters long. Examples:

**NATO**  
**FEMA**  
**POTUS**  
**Ecofin**  
**Frontex**  
**Unescocat**

By way of exception, it is UOC policy to capitalize all letters in **UNESCO** and in the names of other organizations that choose to do so in their own official literature. For example:

**UNESCO**  
**UNICEF**

In contrast, initialisms are formed from the first letter of each of a series of words. They are written in uppercase throughout without spaces and, in BrE, do not take full stops.

**BBC**  
**UN**  
**UK**

## Foreign acronyms

When translating, do not replicate a foreign acronym or initialism in English unless the English version is also widely used. Instead, use an English translation of the full term on first mention, followed by the source-language acronym to be used thereafter in parentheses. Thus, *DNI* (*document nacional d'identitat*) should be left as is (eg **the Spanish national identity document (DNI)**), whereas *IVA* (*impost sobre el valor afegit*) should be translated (ie **VAT** or **value-added tax**).

For longer terms that lack a well-established English equivalent, it may be possible to use a shortened English version of the full term for subsequent mentions instead of the source-language acronym. Thus, the *CATALAN Pla de recerca i innovació (PRI)* could be rendered as **the Catalan Research and Innovation Plan (PRI)** on first mention and **the PRI** on subsequent mention, or it could be rendered **the Catalan Research and Innovation Plan** on first mention and referred to as simply **the plan** thereafter.

Foreign acronyms and initialisms in a foreign company's name, such as **GmbH** (*Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung*) or **SL** (*societat limitada*), should always be left in the source language.

With regard to its own acronym, the UOC's policy is as follows: on first mention, use **Universitat Oberta de Catalunya (Open University of Catalonia, UOC)**; on subsequent mention, use **the UOC**.

## Capitalization of the referent

Just because an acronym uses capital letters, it does not mean that the words it is based on do. The use of capital letters in the referent will depend on the nature of the words themselves. Thus:

**personal identification number (PIN)**  
**the Organization for Security and Co-operation in Europe (OSCE)**  
**the Economic and Financial Affairs Council (Ecofin)**

## Plurals

As with *CATALAN*, the plurals of English acronyms are not formed by doubling the letters (eg ~~CCDD~~, ~~TTAA~~).

Instead, they are formed by adding a final lowercase *s* (with no apostrophe). Example:

**CDs** (compact discs)  
**TAs** (teaching assistants)

## Use of the definite article

The definite article is not generally used with acronyms (eg **NATO**, not ~~the NATO~~). In contrast, it is used with initialisms when it is also used with the referent when this is written in full. Examples:

**the IMF** (the International Monetary Fund)  
**the BBC** (the British Broadcasting Corporation)  
but **MI6** not ~~the MI6~~ (Military Intelligence, Section 6)



### Use of indefinite articles

The use of the indefinite article **a** or **an** is determined by the pronunciation of the acronym or initialism rather than the pronunciation of the words it is based on. Thus:

**a PhD in English**  
**a UOC programme**  
**an EU regulation**  
**an IT specialist**

### Specific preferences

In addition to the above, the UOC house style includes the following preferences:

#### *eg* and *ie*

Write the initialisms **eg** (*exempli gratia*) and **ie** (*id est*) in lowercase letters without spaces or full stops. Do not follow them with a comma. Examples:

**...other institutional duties (eg representation of the UOC)...**  
**...geo-based applications (ie applications with embedded GPS applications)...**

Remember, **eg** and **ie** are not interchangeable: **eg** means **for example**, whereas **ie** means **that is**.

#### *AD/CE* and *BC/BCE*

Write the initialisms **AD** (*Anno Domini*), **CE** (*Common Era*), **BC** (*before Christ*) and **BCE** (*before the Common Era*) in uppercase letters without spaces or full stops. Examples:

**200 BC**  
**1500 CE**

#### *pm* and *am*

Write the initialisms **pm** (*post meridiem*) and **am** (*ante meridiem*) in lowercase letters without spaces or full stops. Examples:

**1 pm**  
**2:15 am**

Remember, **am** is used for the first half of the day (from 12 midnight to 11:59 in the morning), while **pm** is used for the second half (from 12 noon to 11:59 at night).

Please note that unlike in CATALAN, when telling time in English, you must separate the hour and minutes with a colon (eg **4:15**, not **4.15**).

## 1.3. Symbols

Symbols are another form of shorthand and are particularly common in certain types of texts (eg mathematical, scientific or economic). This notwithstanding, by and large, they should be used sparingly in general texts that do not contain a lot of figures.

Be careful not to use symbols in running text with numbers written as words. Instead, use words with words and symbols with figures. Thus, write **€7 million** or **seven million euros**, but not **€~~seven~~ million**. This notwithstanding, please see the section on currency below for the UOC's preferences regarding references to monetary sums.

## Chemical elements

The first letter of a chemical symbol is always uppercased (eg **N**, **H**, **Ag**, **Mg**). This is also true for each chemical symbol in a chemical compound (eg **NaCl**, **H<sub>2</sub>O**).

## Currency

Express monetary amounts in both running text and tables using the symbol followed by the amount in figures. Examples:

€153 million  
£150

Note that, unlike in **CATALAN**, in English currency symbols are placed before the amount in figures. Moreover, decimals are indicated with a point, whereas thousands, millions, etc. are indicated with a comma. Example:

\$1,999.99 (not ~~1.999,99 \$~~)

## Percentages

Use **per cent** when writing the number in letters (eg **five per cent**) and % when writing it in figures (eg **13%**). Always use figures when citing statistics. Examples:

**The number of copies reserved for critics may not exceed five per cent of those printed for each edition.**

**Nearly 5% of all respondents agreed that...**

## Temperatures

Temperatures should be written in figures followed directly by the degree sign and the relevant unit without any spaces. Examples:

37°C  
98.6°F

## Weights and measurements

As a general rule, the UOC prefers to use the International System of Units (SI); however, non-metric units are accepted in certain contexts and widely used phrases (eg **square feet**, **a pint of beer**).

SI units are written without stops, have no plurals and are separated from the preceding figures by a space (eg **10 kg**, **25 m**).

All letters in SI symbols are lowercased except those corresponding to proper names or to avoid confusion, eg **bit** (**b**) and **byte** (**B**). However, when the units are spelled out in full, no uppercase letters are used. Examples:

**1 N, one newton**  
**2 K, two kelvins**  
**3 kB, three kilobytes**

The standard prefixes for SI units are lowercased for **kilo-** (**k**) and below, and uppercased for **mega-** (**M**) and above. For more information on the SI, see [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International\\_System\\_of\\_Units](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_System_of_Units).

## 2. Capitalization

Capitalization rules can vary greatly from one language to the next and even, on some points, within the same language, so a certain amount of discretion applies. By the same token, however, priority must be given to ensuring consistency within each text.

Notwithstanding the above, it is generally agreed that capital letters are used to distinguish between proper and common nouns, to indicate the start of a new sentence and to indicate the title of a publication or work of art.

Specifically, the UOC recommends the following guidelines.

### 2.1. General conventions

Use a capital letter to indicate the start of a new sentence.

Likewise, capitalize the first letter of any quotation appearing in running text that is a complete sentence itself; otherwise, leave it in lowercase. Compare:

**According to Phillips, “Teachers everywhere are eager for clearer, more compelling standards that take the mystery out of what they’re supposed to be teaching.”**

**Schank writes that while learning objectives may “seem like a good idea for the basis of curriculum design,” they are actually “one of the main evils in the school system.”**

Capital letters should also be used to indicate the titles of books, magazines, newspapers, legal documents, plays, films, albums, songs, television shows, etc. As a general rule, the UOC prefers to use sentence case for such titles (ie to capitalize only the first word and any proper nouns appearing thereafter), unless the work or publication itself does otherwise. This is particularly true with regard to long descriptive titles. For example:

***Communication technologies in Latin America and Africa: a multidisciplinary perspective***

***The New York Times***

**Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector**

When referring to a specific part of a book, legal document, etc., only capitalize words such as **part**, **section**, **chapter** or **article** when they are actually used in the name of the part in question. Do not capitalize these words when they are used generically. Thus:

**The definitions to be used throughout the convention are given in the first three articles.**

**The board members shall be appointed as set forth in Article 7.3 below.**

Finally, unlike in CATALAN, in English the first-person singular pronoun **I** is always capitalized. Example:

**Professor Guasch and I are pleased to welcome you all to the conference.**

## 2.2. People

### Names and surnames

As in CATALAN, all names and surnames should begin with a capital letter. Examples:

**Pompeu Fabra**  
**Antoni Gaudí**

### Titles and offices

Capitalize the first letter of abbreviated courtesy titles (eg **Mr, Ms, Dr, Prof.**).

Capitalize all titles, abbreviated or otherwise, in direct addresses and when they precede a proper name. In contrast, lowercase both generic references to offices and titles that follow a proper name. Examples:

**With all due respect, Professor Barceló, that may not be feasible.**  
**Later this month, Professor Puig will give a talk on the subject at the Athenaeum.**  
**They met with the vice president of the university to discuss the plan.**  
**Josep A. Planell, president of the UOC, will speak at the conference.**

Unlike in CATALAN, titles forming part of a name are capitalized. Compare:

*el senyor Gispert* **Mr Gispert**  
*santa Teresa* **Saint Teresa**

## 2.3. Places

### Geographical features

Capitalize all function words in the names of geographical features commonly considered proper nouns (specific mountains, oceans, rivers, etc.). Examples:

**the Ural Mountains**  
**the Pacific Ocean**  
**the River Ebro/the Ebro River**

Note, however, that any subsequent references in the text to such features using only the common noun are not capitalized. Example:

**The Congo River is the deepest river in the world and one of its largest. A daytrip to the river has been planned for tomorrow.**

### Geographical locations and administrative regions

Capitalize all function words in the names of geographical locations or administrative regions commonly considered proper nouns (countries, states, towns, etc.). Examples:

**Tanzania**  
**Uttar Pradesh**  
**the Federal District of Mexico**  
**Schenectady**

Note: In order to facilitate comprehension by non-Catalan speakers, initial articles forming a part of CATALAN place names should be capitalized in English, even when they appear in running text. Example:

**The conference will be held in L'Hospitalet de Llobregat.**

### Historical, political and geopolitical regions

Capitalize all function words in the names of historical, political and geopolitical regions. Examples:

**Scandinavia**  
**the Middle East**  
**the Pacific Rim**  
**the Ottoman Empire**

Note that this is not always the case in CATALAN. Compare:

*l'Àsia oriental* **East Asia**

### Local place names

In English, all function words in local place names (specific roads, squares, parks, etc.) should be capitalized. Examples:

**Passeig de Gràcia**  
**Tahrir Square**  
**Central Park**

This stands in contrast to CATALAN, in which such words tend to be lowercased when they form a part of a Catalan address appearing in running text. Compare:

*Anàvem pel passeig de la Reina Elisenda...*  
**We were heading down Passeig de la Reina Elisenda...**

### Unique locations

Capitalize all function words in the names of unique locations commonly considered proper nouns (specific buildings, monuments, venues, etc.). Examples:

**the Millennium Dome**  
**the Eiffel Tower**  
**Camp Nou**

Again, this is not always true in CATALAN. Compare:

*l'abadia de Westminster* **Westminster Abbey**  
*el palau de Buckingham* **Buckingham Palace**

## 2.4. Things

### Cultural and artistic schools and movements

Capitalize cultural and artistic schools and movements when they are derived from proper nouns. Examples:

**a Victorian novel**  
**Gothic architecture**  
**a Romanesque church**

In most other cases, they can be lowercased. Thus:

**a baroque speech**  
**a neoclassical building**

### Ethnicities and religions

Unlike in CATALAN, the names of ethnicities, religions and the members thereof are capitalized. Examples:

**African-American**

**Taoism**

**Baha'i**

### Geological periods

Capitalize the names of geological periods but not words like **period**, **era** or **epoch** themselves. Examples:

**Tertiary period**

**Pliocene epoch**

### Government programmes, legal acts and documents

Capitalize all function words in the names of government programmes, laws, documents, etc. Examples:

**the Spain-Latin America Interuniversity Cooperation Programme**

**the Personal Data Protection Act**

**the Catalan Energy and Climate Change Plan 2012-2020**

### Holidays

Capitalize all function words in the names of holidays. Examples:

**New Year's Eve**

**Boxing Day**

### Institutions, bodies and organizations

Capitalize all function words in the names of institutions, bodies, organizations, etc., unless they are being used generically. Examples:

**the Catalan Development Cooperation Agency**

**the Spanish Ministry of Industry, Tourism and Commerce**

**but Financial support was provided by several Catalan ministries.**

### Means of transport

Do not capitalize a means of transport unless it is being used as a proper noun. Examples:

**We took the underground.**

**The red line is the oldest line of the Barcelona Metro.**

### Nationalities, demonyms and languages

Unlike in CATALAN, in English nationalities, demonyms and languages are capitalized. Examples:

**Canadian**

**Spaniard**

**Mandarin**

### Planets and other celestial bodies

Capitalize the names of planets and other specific celestial bodies (eg **Mercury**, **Pluto**), but do not capitalize **earth** unless specifically referring to the name of the planet. In such cases, the article **the** is often omitted. Examples:

**What on earth are you talking about?**

**He noted that Earth is the third planet from the sun.**

Note: The words **sun** and **moon** are not generally capitalized. An exception may be (but is not always) made in technical texts when they are explicitly being used as proper nouns, particularly when they appear in conjunction with the proper names of other celestial bodies. Examples:

**NASA's Hubble Space Telescope orbits Earth, while the twin GRAIL satellites orbit the Moon.**

### Political parties and movements

Capitalize the official names of political parties and movements and of the formal adherents thereof, but, in general, do not capitalize the names of political ideologies, schools of thought, etc., or the generic adjectives derived therefrom. Exceptions may be made in texts that include both official names and general schools of thought, capitalizing all references for the sake of consistency. However, when in doubt, err on the side of lowercase to prevent the unsightly effect of superfluous capitalization. Examples:

**The Socialist Party won the Catalan elections in 2003.**

**At the end of the war, the communist government nationalized all Tokaj vineyards.**

### Prehistoric and historical periods and events

Capitalize the names of prehistoric and historical periods and events. Examples:

**the Ice Age**

**the Middle Ages**

**the Enlightenment**

In contrast, more modern periods and events are often lowercased. In such cases, follow common usage, taking care to ensure consistency throughout the text. Examples:

**the space age**

**Prohibition**

**the digital age**

### Proper names used as adjectives and common nouns

Capitalize proper names when they are used as adjectives (eg **Bunsen burner**), but not when they are used as common nouns (eg **a kelvin**).

### Time units

Unlike in CATALAN, in English the names of the months and the days of the week are capitalized. Examples:

**January**

**Monday**

However, as in CATALAN, the names of the seasons are not capitalized. Examples:

**spring**  
**summer**  
**autumn** (BrE)/**fall** (AmE)  
**winter**

### Trade names

Capitalize trade names unless they have come to be used as common nouns. Examples:

**Microsoft**  
**Apple**  
**a kleenex**  
**a jacuzzi**

### The word *state*

The word **state** deserves special mention. As a general rule, it is not capitalized. However, common exceptions include when it is used as part of a formal designation (eg **EU Member State**), when it is used to designate a defined group of countries (eg **the Gulf States**) and when it is used to refer to the government of a country in political theory and legal texts (ie **the State**).

### Words derived from proper nouns

The capitalization of words derived from proper nouns varies (eg **a Freudian slip**, **a caesarean section**, **a boycott**); in such cases, you should thus consult a reliable dictionary. The UOC recommends the Oxford English Dictionary for BrE and the Merriam-Webster Dictionary for AmE.

## 2.5. UOC-specific usage

### Names and titles of courses, departments, etc.

Use title case (ie capitalize the first and last word and all function words in between) for the names and titles of:

- Courses, specializations and subjects: **bachelor's degree in Catalan Language and Literature; specialization course in Indirect Taxation and Tax Procedures; Facility Management I.**
- Departments, chairs and knowledge areas: **the Health Sciences Department, the UNESCO Chair in E-Learning, City Management.**
- Projects (UOC and interuniversity): **the Classroom Library project, the Europortfolio: A European Network of Eportfolio Experts and Practitioners project.**
- Workshops, conferences, talks and other events: **the 2nd International Workshop on Free/Open-Source Rule-Based Machine Translation.**

In contrast, use sentence case (ie capitalize only the first word and any proper nouns thereafter) for the titles of papers and official or institutional reports or documents. Example:

**The humanities and the professional world: report on the round tables**  
**E-government and public services: a case study of the inter-administrative portal CAT365**



Finally, do not capitalize the names of disciplines when referring to them generically.  
Example:

**Oller studied law at university.**

**The word *university***

When using the word **university**, distinguish between generic references and references that stand in for a proper name. The former are lowercased, while the latter, when referring to the UOC, take an initial cap. Examples:

**She taught at the local university.**

**An extensive selection of training options are available in a variety of the University's [ie the UOC's] knowledge areas.**

### 3. Type

The consistent use of specific fonts, sizes and styles is one aspect of ensuring an identifiable corporate look. For more information on these points and on how they apply to the UOC's institutional texts, please see the *Normativa d'ús de la marca Universitat Oberta de Catalunya* (the UOC brand style guide, in Catalan and Spanish only).

More generally, special font styles can be used to direct readers' attention to specific items in a text, for emphasis, and to identify meta-linguistic references. That said, in deference to readers' innate abilities and to minimize distractions, they should not be abused.

Finally, font styles are also conventionally used in many bibliographic referencing systems. For more information on this point, please see the section on bibliographic references below.

#### 3.1. Bold

##### Emphasis

Bolding can be used to draw attention to a given term or phrase within the body of a text. This is particularly true in online and advertising texts. Example:

**It is necessary to hold an official university degree and have passed a minimum of 300 ECTS credits.**

Nevertheless, when it is overused in this way, it can lose its effect. It should thus be used frugally.

##### Titles

Bolding is also often used to set off the titles of texts and any section headings within them. Example:

##### **Student Services**

**Students at the UOC have access to a wide range of services. Highlights include: [...]**

#### 3.2. Italics

##### Emphasis

Italics can be used to emphasize a given term or phrase. Example:

**Indeed, *no* rule should be set in stone.**

However, as with bolding above, it is important not to overuse them for this purpose so as not to irritate readers or weaken their impact.

##### Foreign words and phrases

Italicize foreign words and phrases (including from Latin), except when they have come to be accepted as standard English. Example:

*el seny i la rauxa*

*mileurista*

*je ne sais quoi*

*quid pro quo*

but **machismo, doppelgänger, fjord, umami, croissant**

Notwithstanding the above, do not italicize foreign company and other proper names. Examples:

**Universitat Oberta de Catalunya**  
**Ferrocarrils de la Generalitat de Catalunya**  
**El Corte Inglés**

Likewise, do not italicize foreign words when they comprise a direct quotation already set off in quotation marks. Example:

**In the words of Jaume Sisa, “Qualsevol nit pot sortir el sol.”**

### **Metalinguistic references**

Italics are also used to indicate metalinguistic references, that is, when discussing a given word or sentence used in a text or defining terms to be used subsequently therein. For example:

**Let’s talk about the word *word*.**

Likewise, they can also be used to refer to a given letter or group of letters in running text. Example:

**In English, regular plurals are formed by adding the suffix -s or -es to the end of the word.**

### **Scientific nomenclature**

The genera and species in the scientific names of living organisms are always italicized. Examples:

***Escherichia coli***  
***Homo sapiens***

Additional italicization varies from field to field.

### **Titles of books, periodicals and works of art**

The titles of books, newspapers, magazines, films, plays and other works of art should be italicized. Examples:

**Orwell’s *Homage to Catalonia***  
***La Vanguardia***  
***Vicky Cristina Barcelona***  
**Miró’s *The Tilled Field***

### **Verbatim reproductions**

Italics can also be used to denote a verbatim reproduction of another text in running text. Example:

**John Dewey’s *freedom of intelligence* referred to freedom to pursue the internal or intellectual side of activity.**

Note, however, that in English as in CATALAN they should not be used when the passage being cited is already set off with quotation marks.

### 3.3. Underlining

#### Alternative to italics

Underlining is sometimes used as an alternative to italics, although this usage is less common today than it was when most people used typewriters or wrote in longhand. Accordingly, underlining and italics should not be used at the same time. Likewise, they must be used consistently; that is, do not alternate between underlining and italics to place emphasis, indicate book titles, etc., within a given text. Example:

Manuel Castell's The Rise of the Network Society was first published in 1996.

#### Hyperlinks

Underlining is often used in online texts to indicate hyperlinks. As a general rule, the UOC recommends using a combination of underlining and blue for such links. For example:

For AmE spelling conventions, the UOC recommends the Merriam-Webster dictionary.

### 3.4. Miscellaneous

#### Quotation marks

The UOC recommends using smart quotes and curly apostrophes, rather than dumb quotes and straight apostrophes, wherever possible. However, this recommendation must always be subject to ensuring consistent use of one set of glyphs or the other throughout the text. Examples:

The lecture was entitled “ICTs in teaching: possibilities and challenges”.  
the UOC’s educational model

## 4. Numbers

How numbers are written can vary from language to language and even from institution to institution within a single language. To ensure a polished and consistent finished product, it is thus important to apply the same rules throughout a given text. With this goal in mind, the UOC has put together the following guidelines.

### 4.1. Numbers written as words

As a general rule, in running text, spell out the numbers **one** to **nine**, but use figures for numbers **10** and up. Examples:

**The YouTube channels of seven European and Middle Eastern universities will be accessible on the EDU platform.**

**The course load will range from 60 to 90 credits per academic year.**

This notwithstanding, when a passage contains both, try to be consistent. For instance, if a number in a given category must be written in figures, use figures for all the numbers in that category. Examples:

**Nine of the twelve research groups recognized by the AGAUR are emergent groups** (not ~~Nine of the 12...~~).

**He is the author of 3 books, 46 refereed journal articles, 122 refereed conference papers and 16 book chapters** (not ~~...three books, 46...~~).

Such exceptions should be applied in the passage in question but need not extend to the text as a whole.

Exceptions are also made for times and dates, which, even in running text, are nearly always referred to with figures. Examples:

**The conference will take place in Barcelona on 1 and 2 July.**

**The group will meet on Thursday from 5 pm to 8 pm.**

Remember, both cardinal and ordinal compound numbers from 21 to 99 take hyphens when written as words. Examples:

**twenty-one**

**thirty-third**

In non-technical texts, use words when there is no way to avoid beginning a sentence with a number. Example:

**Fifteen out of sixteen statistics are made up on the spot.**

That said, another solution can often be found. Example:

**Some 15 out of 16 statistics are made up on the spot.**

**The year 2011 was a dramatic one.** In general, try not to combine single-digit figures with words in hyphenated expressions. Example:

**a three-part miniseries** (not ~~a 3-part miniseries~~)

**a one-way street** (not ~~a 1-way street~~)

In contrast, multi-digit figures and words are sometimes combined in hyphenated expressions, particularly in certain set phrases. Examples:

**a 40-hour work week**  
**a 12-hour clock**

When two numbers appear next to each other, spell out the number closest to the unit to prevent confusion. Example:

**50 ten-cent coins**  
**12 ten-minute presentations**

Write round or approximate numbers as words, but use figures to refer to specific ones. Compare:

**Nearly two thousand people turned out for the event.**  
**A total of 1,997 people turned out for the event.**

Note that hundreds and thousands may be expressed entirely in figures or entirely in words, but not in a mixture of both. Examples:

**100 or one hundred** (not ~~**1 hundred**~~)

In contrast, the words **million**, **billion** and **trillion** may be used with figures or words. That said, when the number is not an integer or is greater than 9, figures are preferred. Examples:

**three million or 3 million**, but **3.5 billion** (not ~~**three-point-five billion**~~) and **35 billion** (not ~~**thirty-five billion**~~)

In general, write fractions as words. The words should be hyphenated when used as adjectives or adverbs, but not when used as nouns. Examples:

**a two-thirds majority** but **a majority of two thirds**

Also, write numbers as words when they are used with the words **per cent** (eg **fifteen per cent**). In contrast, write them as figures when using the symbol % (eg **15%**).

Finally, unlike CATALAN, AmE and, increasingly, BrE use the short-scale system for naming large numbers. Under this system, the term **billion** refers to  $1 \times 10^9$  (1,000,000,000), whereas **trillion** is used for  $1 \times 10^{12}$  (1,000,000,000,000). To ensure consistency in its English-language texts, the UOC recommends using the “short billion” to express  $1 \times 10^9$  unless otherwise explicitly instructed. Example:

**According to some estimates, the world population will reach 10.5 billion by 2050.**

## 4.2. Numbers written as figures

### General conventions

Unlike in CATALAN, when writing figures in English use points to indicate decimals and commas to indicate thousands, millions, etc. Examples:

**3.14**  
**6,973,738,433**

Notwithstanding the above, as in CATALAN, commas should not be used to indicate thousands in years (eg **14 July 1790**), page numbers (eg **pp 1743–1749**) or street numbers (eg **1500 Main Street**).

### Abbreviations and symbols

Use figures with abbreviations and symbols of measurement and monetary units. Examples:

**7 kg**  
**€50**  
**5%**

Note, however, that when the units are spelled out, the number may be written with figures or letters (eg **7 kilograms** or **seven kilograms**). The opposite is not true (eg **7 kg** not **seven kg**).

### Lists

Use figures in lists of objects, ingredients, tallies, etc., when they are written out in list format. Example:

**The UOC's academic offer includes: 15 bachelor's degree courses, 8 university master's courses, 46 UOC-specific master's degree courses, 31 postgraduate courses and 2 doctorate courses.**

### Ranges

Use figures when referring to ranges denoted by an en-dash, but not necessarily ranges denoted with words. Compare:

**The topic is addressed in sections 7.1–7.8.**  
**The room can accommodate six to eight computers.**

For more information on ranges, see section 4.3 below.

### Serial numbers

Use figures when citing serial numbers, such as those used to identify the different sections of a treaty or law. Example:

**Chapter 1, Article 1, paragraph 1 of the Charter of the United Nations**

### Statistics

Write numbers as figures when citing statistics. Example:

**In all, 75% of UOC students are between the ages of 25 and 45.**

### Tables and graphs

Use figures for all numbers in tables and graphs. Example:

#### **The UOC on Facebook**

	2008/2009	2009/2010	2010/2011
<b>No. pages opened on Facebook</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Number of interactions</b>	<b>51</b>	<b>275</b>	<b>254</b>
<b>Followers</b>	<b>751</b>	<b>4,389</b>	<b>9,322</b>

## Votes

Likewise, use figures when citing vote tallies. Example:

**Only 7 senators voted in favour, while 91 voted against and 2 abstained.**

## 4.3. Ranges

Be consistent when describing ranges. If you begin with **between**, continue with **and**; if you begin with **from**, continue with **to**; do not combine a preposition with a dash; etc. Examples:

**from 5°C to 15°C** (not ~~from 5°C–15°C~~)

**between 17 kg and 20 kg** (not ~~between 17 to 20 kg~~)

**30–40 km** (not ~~from 30–40 km~~)

When using words to connect the two extremes of a range, repeat any symbols or multiples. Examples:

**between five million euros and nine million euros**

**from €5 million to €9 million**

In contrast, if you use an en-dash to indicate a range, repeat only those symbols and/or multiples that change. In such cases, change the closed en-dash to an open one. Compare:

**€20–30 billion but €900 million – €1 billion**

## 4.4. Times and dates

Multiple, sometimes contradictory conventions are used to indicate times and dates in English. It is thus critical to be as clear and consistent as possible to avoid confusion. In the interest of ensuring this clarity, the UOC recommends the following guidelines.

### Dates

Dates should be written as follows: the number of the day, followed by the name of the month written in full, followed by a four-digit year. There should be no internal punctuation. Examples:

**1 January 2012**

**31 December 2012**

Where space is absolutely of the essence, use figures separated by slashes (eg **1/1/2012**). However, wherever possible, write out the name of the month to prevent confusion between BrE and AmE formats.

When a date is preceded by the day of the week, separate them with a comma. Example:

**Thursday, 24 October 1929**

When referring to a year in running text, use all four digits for added clarity (eg **2001**, not '01).

Finally, there is no need to repeat a year in running text when it is already clear from context.



## Decades

In English, decades can be expressed in words (eg **the sixties**) or figures (eg **the '60s, the 1960s**). In order to prevent confusion stemming from the recent turn of century, the UOC prefers to use four-digit figures.

## Durations

When referring to durations in technical texts and on schedules, programmes, etc., abbreviate the word **hours** as **h**. Write the word in full in more general texts. Examples:

**Duration: 1.5 h**

**The session is expected to last two hours.**

## Time

Use a 12-hour clock followed by a space and the abbreviation **am** or **pm** (lowercased with no internal punctuation) when citing times. Examples:

**8 am**

**5:30 pm**

For added clarity, consider using **12 noon** (instead of **12 pm**) and **12 midnight** (instead of **12 am**), where possible.

## Time spans

As with other ranges, when indicating time spans, be sure to use the right collocation. In other words, use **from** with **to** (eg **from June to September**), **between** with **and** (eg **between 1954 and 1957**), or a single closed-up en-dash without any preposition at all (eg **Monday–Friday**).

When indicating a span of years with a closed-up en-dash, do not repeat the century in the second year unless it changes. Exceptions may be made for the first decade of a century. Examples:

**1980–90 but 1890–1990**

**2001–2003 or 2001–03**

Note that, in the context of a span of years, an en-dash refers to two different calendar years. In contrast, a slash refers to a single non-calendar year that does not necessarily begin on 1 January of the first year and that ends at an unspecified date in the second year. Thus, **1990–91** refers to the years 1990 and 1991, whereas **1990/91** might refer to, for example, an academic year beginning in September 1990 and ending in June 1991.

Please note that the UOC recommends using the following formats for references to academic years: academic year + range of years (expressed in four-digit numbers and separated by a slash) or the + range of years + academic year. Thus:

**The UOC inaugurated the 2010/2011 academic year on Monday.**

**The academic year 2010/2011 began on Monday.**

## 4.5. Roman numerals

### Centuries

Unlike in CATALAN, in English centuries are generally denoted with Arabic ordinal numbers, rather than Roman numerals. Compare:

**the 21st century** *el segle XXI*

### Course names

Roman numerals are used to indicate the level or sequence of academic subjects with the same name. Example:

**French I**

**Finance and Tax Law II**

### Editions of events

Unlike in CATALAN, Arabic ordinal numbers, rather than Roman numerals, are generally used to indicate the edition of an event in English. Thus:

**8th Conference on Internet, Law and Politics**

*VIII Congrés Internet, Dret i Política*

### Royalty and religious figures

Roman numerals are used in the names of monarchs and certain high-ranking religious figures such as popes and orthodox patriarchs. Examples:

**Queen Elizabeth II**

**Pope John Paul II**

**Patriarch Alexy II**

### Wars

The names of the first and second world wars are also generally written and abbreviated with Roman numerals. Thus:

**World War I**

**WWII**

## 5. Lists, tables and figures

With a view to ensuring consistency, the UOC recommends the following guidelines for the inclusion of lists, tables and figures in conventional texts.

### 5.1. Lists

#### General conventions

As a general rule, use automatic numbering when making lists. This will help to prevent mistakes arising from subsequent insertions or deletions.

Likewise, be sure to format all lists within a given text consistently in terms of bullet points, tabs, etc. For instance, do not use numbers for each item in your first list, letters for each item in your second and dashes for each item in your third.

In addition to formatting, it is important to ensure grammatical continuity between the introduction to a list and each item in it. Thus, if the introductory sentence calls for a list of fragments beginning with gerunds, do not begin the first item in the list with a gerund only to render subsequent items as full sentences or start them with infinitives or conjugated verbs.

Finally, in order to prevent confusion and grammatical errors, do not continue your introductory sentence after the final item in a list. Instead, try to include any necessary additional information in the introduction itself or, where that is not possible, include it in a new sentence after the final item in the list.

#### Types of lists

Most lists fall into one of four categories: lists of short items (words or phrases with no verbs); lists of items each of which completes the introductory sentence; lists of complete statements that are not grammatical continuations of the introductory sentence; and lists in which at least one item includes more than one full sentence.

The UOC recommends the following guidelines in each case:

##### Short items without verbs

Introduce the list with a full sentence ending in a colon. Lowercase each item in the list and end it with a comma or no punctuation at all. End the final item with a full stop. Example:

**Current research topics include:**

- anonymous communications,
- covert channels in computer systems,
- detection of hidden information (steganalysis),
- digital forensics,
- information hiding and privacy,
- steganography,
- subliminal channels in cryptographic protocols,
- watermarking for protection of intellectual property.

### Items completing the introductory sentence

Introduce the list with a full sentence ending in a colon. Lowercase each item in the list and end it with a semicolon. End the final item with a full stop. Example:

**Students will learn how to:**

- **administer GNU/Linux systems;**
- **configure and administer network services in free environments;**
- **install and configure web servers;**
- **design and programme applications with free software tools and resources;**
- **apply their knowledge of the legal aspects and use of free software;**
- **install and configure database management systems.**

### Grammatically independent statements

Introduce the list with a full sentence ending in a colon. Begin each item in the list with an initial cap and end it with a full stop. Example:

**To sign up for an alert, follow these steps:**

- **Log in or, if you are a new user, create an account.**
- **Go to the collection for which you would like to receive the alert and select SUBSCRIBE.**
- **Repeat the process for any other collection you would like to receive an alert for.**

### List in which at least one item consists of multiple sentences

Introduce the list with a full sentence ending in a colon. Begin each item with an initial cap. End each item with a full stop.

**For Google Reader, the steps are as follows:**

- **Go the UOC repository home page and select RSS 2.0.**
- **An RSS channel page will be displayed in XML format. Select and copy the entire URL from the browser address bar.**
- **Sign up for Google Reader (google.com/reader/). If you have a Google or Gmail account, you can use your Google username and password.**
- **Click on the ADD A SUBSCRIPTION link at the top left of the screen.**
- **Paste in the URL of the copied RSS feed and click ADD.**

## 5.2. Tables

The UOC does not require authors to use a single format for all tables. However, it does recommend the following guidelines to ensure a certain basic consistency within and across UOC-published texts.

First, format all tables throughout the text consistently in terms of font, style, alignment, etc.

Second, as a general rule table headings should be placed above, rather than below, the table. Remember, there is no need to include the word *Table* in the heading itself. Example:

**Average scores from 1990 to 2000 (not ~~Table of average scores...~~)**

Finally, when translating into English, make sure that all figures in the table are formatted according to English-language conventions (eg with regard to decimal points, commas or the positioning of currency symbols).

### 5.3. Figures

As with tables, the UOC does not require authors to use a single format for all figures in the texts it publishes. Again, however, to ensure a certain degree of consistency, it does recommend the following guidelines.

First, take care to ensure that figures are formatted consistently throughout each text.

Second, in contrast to table headings, figure headings should be placed below, rather than above, the figure. As with tables, however, there is no need to include the word **figure** (or **graph**, **chart**, **diagram**, etc.) in the heading itself. Example:

**Breakdown of income by age** (not ~~Graph showing breakdown of...~~)

Finally, once again, when translating into English, make sure that any numbers in the figure are formatted according to English-language conventions (eg with regard to decimal points, commas or the positioning of currency symbols).

## 6. Bibliographical references

Bibliographical references are a common and important feature of academic texts. They are used to identify the sources of specific data and opinions cited by an author, to avoid charges of plagiarism and to indicate resources for additional information and reading. To this end, they should be used whether one is directly quoting other authors or summarizing or paraphrasing their words. Moreover, they must provide all the information needed for the reader to find each source in a clear and internally consistent manner. This notwithstanding, it is not always possible to apply all the rules of a chosen referencing system to each citation (eg when a certain piece of information is not available for a given source). In such cases, do your best to maximize consistency with the other citations and to ensure overall reader comprehension.

Multiple valid referencing systems exist (APA, MLA, etc.) and preferences vary both from field to field and from journal to journal. When writing for a journal, you should respect the guidelines set. For example, Artnodes recommends ISO 690 ([en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO\\_690](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO_690)). However, where no such guidelines exist, we recommend using the Oxford system.

For translations of texts by UOC authors, the system chosen by the author should be used unless otherwise stated. Nevertheless, where applicable, citations should be revised for internal consistency and to ensure that English-language conventions are used with regard to punctuation, dates, abbreviations, etc.

### 6.1. The Oxford system

The Oxford, or documentary-note, referencing system is most commonly used in the humanities. It is a note system (ie one that uses footnotes or endnotes) as opposed to a parenthetical one (ie one in which the citations are included in the text itself). To this end, superscript numbers are included in the text to indicate citations and the full bibliographical information of each source is provided in the corresponding note at the foot of the page (footnote) or end of the text (endnote). These numbers, called note identifiers, are placed at the end of the clause or sentence containing the reference being cited or, where appropriate, immediately after a direct quote and any related punctuation. Examples:

**But however important the reverse arrow of causality may be, a growing body of empirical research has shown that institutions exert a very strong determining effect on aggregate incomes.<sup>1</sup>**

**Ghanoonparvar describes the role of these writers as becoming “that of a prophet, a prophet whose mission concerns not the next but the present world.”<sup>29</sup>**

Note that, when a single source is referenced more than once, subsequent references should be shortened. This may be done through the use of Latin abbreviations such as *ibid.* (indicating that a citation is identical to the one immediately preceding it), *ibid.* plus a page number (when the citation refers to a different page in the same source as the one immediately preceding it), the author’s surname plus *op cit.* and a page number (when referring to a different page in a source cited earlier in the text but not in the immediately preceding citation) and the author’s surname plus *loc cit.* (when referring to the same page in a source cited earlier in the text). In the latter two cases, where multiple works have been cited by the author in question, it will also be necessary to include two or three key words

from the title of the work or the year of publication, where different, so as to clarify for readers which one is being referred to. Examples:

<sup>1</sup> M Carnoy *et al.*, “Does On-line Distance Higher Education Pay Off for Adult Learners? The Case of the Open University of Catalonia”, *Higher Education Quarterly*, vol. 66, no. 3, 2012, p. 250.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 255.

[...]

<sup>17</sup> Carnoy *et al.*, *op cit.*, p. 266–268.

Alternatively, you may skip the Latin abbreviations altogether and use the author’s surname followed by the year of publication and the relevant page number(s) in such cases. As above, when multiple works published by the same author in the same year have been cited, such subsequent citations should also include two or three key words from the relevant title. Examples:

<sup>20</sup> Carnoy, 2012, p. 260.

or

<sup>20</sup> Carnoy, 2012, “Does On-line Distance...”, p. 260.

Such concise references may also be used for all notes when the full bibliographical information for all sources is provided in a bibliography at the end. See the end of this section for additional information on the formatting of such citations.

### Information to be included

Certain details should be included in each citation, wherever available and applicable, generally in the same basic order. These include:

1. The author or authors’ name or initial(s) and surname(s).
2. The title of the work (article, paper, book, etc.) being cited.
3. The title of the journal or, in the case of book chapters, book in which the work appears.
4. In the case of journals, the volume and issue numbers.
5. The publisher and the place and year of publication.
6. The relevant page numbers.
7. For electronic resources, the date the resource was retrieved and the URL or database it was retrieved from.

Ideally, additional information should also be included, where available, for certain kinds of sources (eg the edition of a book, the editor of a book with chapters by multiple authors, the translator of a translated work). However, it is not always possible to ascertain all relevant pieces of information for all the cited works.

Examples of some of the most common types of citations in the Oxford style are provided below. A certain degree of flexibility is possible – for instance, you may prefer to use authors’ full names rather than just their initials; however, be sure to make any such changes consistently so as to prevent confusion.

#### Book (one author)

A Vilalta, *Alimentos entre parientes*, Editorial Bosch, Barcelona, 2005.

#### Book (two or three authors)

A Cerrillo and A Galán, *Qualitat i responsabilitat en la difusió d'informació pública a internet*, Escola d'Administració Pública de Catalunya, Barcelona, 2007.

#### Book (more than three authors)

D Sáiz *et al.*, *Aportaciones a la psicología de la memoria*, Cardellach, Barcelona, 1999.

#### Book chapter

M Castells, "Museums in the Information Era: Cultural Connectors of Time and Space" in R Parry (ed.), *Museums in a Digital Age*, Routledge, London, 2010, pp. 427-434.

#### Journal article

L Pastor, "Las leyes de la atracción en los títulos de las películas de cine. Un caso de análisis de la vía heurística en la comunicación de masas", *Anàlisi: quaderns de comunicació i cultura*, vol. 43, 2011, pp. 89-103.

#### Newspaper article

J Nadal, "Títol de la UOC a l'escola de música avançada", *El Punt Avui. Comarques Gironines*, 5 September 2012, p. 4.

#### Articles published in e-journals

A Sangrà and P Fernández-Michels, "Quality perception within corporate e-learning providers in Catalonia", *Quality Assurance in Education*, vol. 19, no. 4, pp. 375-391, retrieved 19 September 2012 from the Emerald Insight database.

#### Other information from websites

Council of Europe, *About the Charter for Regional or Minority Languages*, retrieved 19 September 2012, <[http://www.coe.int/t/dg4/education/minlang/aboutcharter/default\\_en.asp](http://www.coe.int/t/dg4/education/minlang/aboutcharter/default_en.asp)>

#### Reports (group author)

Universitat Oberta de Catalunya, *Campus for Peace Annual Report 2010/2011*, Universitat Oberta de Catalunya, Barcelona, 2011.

#### Secondary references

R M Solow, "We'd better watch out", *The New York Times*, 12 July 1987, cited in J E Triplett, "The Solow Productivity Paradox: What Do Computers Do to Productivity?" *Canadian Journal of Economics*, vol. 32, no. 2, pp. 309-334.

### **Citations in notes vs citations in bibliographies**

In the Oxford system, references cited in a reference list (list of sources cited in the paper) or bibliography (list of sources cited in the paper, as well as other sources used to prepare the text or that might constitute useful additional reading for readers) are listed alphabetically rather than in the order in which they are cited in the text. Moreover, unlike citations appearing in footnotes or endnotes, the author's surname and initials are inverted. Finally, unlike in footnotes or endnotes, no numbers are used to introduce each citation. Compare:

Footnote or endnote:

C T Marsden, "Neutralidad de la Red: Historia, regulación y futuro", *Revista d'Internet, Dret*



*i Política (IDP)*, vol. 13 (February 2012), pp. 24-43.

I Tubella, C Tabernero and V Dwyer, *Internet y television: la guerra de las pantallas*, Ariel, Barcelona, 2008.

Bibliography entry:

Marsden, C T, "Neutralidad de la Red: Historia, regulación y futuro", *Revista d'Internet, Dret i Política (IDP)*, vol. 13 (February 2012), pp. 24-43.

Tubella, I, Tabernero, C, and Dwyer, V, *Internet y television: la Guerra de las pantallas*, Ariel, Barcelona, 2008.

For further information and examples, see:

- [deakin.edu.au/current-students/study-support/study-skills/handouts/oxford-docnote.php](http://deakin.edu.au/current-students/study-support/study-skills/handouts/oxford-docnote.php)
- [w2.vu.edu.au/library/referencing/files/2495 Oxford Guide \(28 9 10\).pdf](http://w2.vu.edu.au/library/referencing/files/2495%20Oxford%20Guide%20(28%209%2010).pdf)

## 6.2. Other referencing systems

As noted above, multiple valid referencing systems exist. Provided below are links to information on some of the most widely used.

### APA (American Psychological Association)

A parenthetical referencing system most commonly used in the social sciences.

- [apastyle.org](http://apastyle.org)
- [owl.english.purdue.edu/owl/resource/560/1/](http://owl.english.purdue.edu/owl/resource/560/1/)

### MLA (Modern Language Association)

A parenthetical referencing system most commonly used in the arts and humanities.

- [owl.english.purdue.edu/owl/resource/747/01/](http://owl.english.purdue.edu/owl/resource/747/01/)

### Chicago Manual of Style

Documentary-note and parenthetical citation systems.

- [chicagomanualofstyle.org/tools\\_citationguide.html](http://chicagomanualofstyle.org/tools_citationguide.html)
- [owl.english.purdue.edu/owl/resource/717/1/](http://owl.english.purdue.edu/owl/resource/717/1/)

## 7. Criteria for translations into English

Translating is a balancing act. On the one hand, translators must strive for maximum fidelity to the substance and tone of the source text; on the other, they must ensure the readability, idiomatic nature and comprehensibility of the translation itself, particularly for readers who may not be familiar with the source language and culture. Depending on the exact nature of the source text, this can variously require straightforward translation, parenthetical explanations or even minor changes in content (eg when dealing with idioms or culturally specific metaphors).

The overall goal of these guidelines is to help ensure the consistency of the translations produced by and for the UOC – and to maximize the comprehension and readability thereof – by providing answers to certain common questions regarding our house style. This notwithstanding, it is important to distinguish between translations to be published by the UOC and translations to be published elsewhere. For UOC texts, the following guidelines should be used; for texts to be published elsewhere, translators should follow the relevant publisher's guidelines or check with the author.

### 7.1. General conventions

Unless otherwise explicitly stated by the end client or target journal, the UOC prefers to use BrE spellings and conventions. For more information on some of the most common differences between BrE and AmE conventions, see section 8 below.

Likewise unless specifically requested to do otherwise by the end client or target journal, do not convert currencies and units of measure (temperatures, weights, lengths, etc.).

Occasionally, a text will make a reference to a cultural phenomenon or concept with no direct equivalent in English (eg *el seny i la rauxa*, *culé*, *capgrossos*). In such cases, leave the term in the source language, but provide a brief descriptive translation in parentheses on first mention.

Additionally, the UOC recommends the following specific guidelines.

### 7.2. Names of people

#### Contemporary figures

Do not translate the names of contemporary figures. Unlike in CATALAN, this includes the names of contemporary royalty. For example:

**King Juan Carlos** (not ~~King John Charles~~)

Likewise, respect the original spellings of names written in the Latin alphabet, including any accents or other reasonably reproducible diacritical marks. Examples:

**Aki Kurismäki**

**Julio Cortázar**

For names written in other alphabets, use standard transliterations. Examples:

**Mohamed ElBaradei**

**Karolos Papoulias**

Remember, different languages use different transliteration systems. For instance, the surname of the current Supreme Leader of Iran is spelled **Jamenei** in Spanish, **Chamenei** in German and **Khamenei** in English and CATALAN. It is thus important to double-check any transliterations used in the source text.

Note: While in the past some foreign media outlets have traditionally referred to Catalans by the Spanish-language versions of their names, that practice is increasingly rare. In texts for the UOC, neither CATALAN nor Spanish names should be translated; rather, people should be referred to by whatever name they use themselves. Examples:

**Pau** (not ~~Pablo~~) **Casals**

**Joan Manel** (not ~~Juan Manuel~~) **Serrat**

### Historical and fictional figures

Translate the names of only those historical or fictional figures with traditional English translations. Thus:

**Avicenna**

**Catherine the Great**

**Smurfette**

but **Don Quixote**

### Popes

Use the English translation of the papal names of popes. Examples:

**Pope John Paul II**

**Pope Benedict XVI**

## 7.3. Names of places

### Continents and countries

Translate the names of continents and countries. Examples:

**Africa**

**South Korea**

### Geographical features

Translate the names of major geographical features (mountains, rivers, gulfs, islands, straits, etc.) with traditional English translations. Examples:

**the Danube River/the River Danube**

**the Canary Islands**

Leave the names of major geographical features without standard translations in the source language. However, translate any generic words used in their names (eg **river** or **mount**), capitalizing them in accordance with English conventions. Examples:

**the Besòs River/the River Besòs**

**the Prades Mountains**

Likewise, unless a traditional English translation exists, do not translate the names of minor or local geographical features. Instead, translate only the generic words used in their names (eg **stream**, **pond**, **ravine**), capitalizing them accordingly, and leave the name itself in the source language. Examples:

**Lake Banyoles**  
**Terradets Ravine**

Exceptions are made for generic words that have come to form a part of the proper name itself, which should be left in the source language. Examples:

**the Sierra Nevada**  
**Río Grande**

### **Geographical, political and geopolitical regions**

Translate the names of geographical, political and geopolitical regions with traditional English translations. Examples:

**Tuscany**  
**the Basque Country**  
**the Caucasus**

Leave all other names in the original. Examples:

**Île-de-France**  
**El Baix Penedès**

### **Monuments and buildings**

Do not translate the names of specific monuments and buildings that are widely known by their original-language names in English or for which there is no clear English equivalent. Examples:

**Camp Nou**  
**Sagrada Família**  
**the Kaaba**  
**Angkor Wat**

In contrast, such names should be translated when traditional or well-established English translations exist. Examples:

**St Peter's Basilica**  
**St Basil's Cathedral**

### **Neighbourhoods**

Do not translate the names of neighbourhoods, districts, boroughs, etc., unless a well-established English translation exists. Example:

**Poble Nou** (not ~~New Town~~)  
but **the Latin Quarter** (not ~~the Quartier Latin~~)

### **Seas and oceans**

Translate the names of seas and oceans. Examples:

**the Atlantic Ocean**  
**the Red Sea**

Remember, the *mar Cantàbrica* is called the **Bay of Biscay** in English, not ~~the Cantabrian Sea~~.

### Street names

As a general rule, street names should not be translated. This is especially true of street names (and other items) in postal addresses. Nevertheless, particularly in running text, you may consider writing all words in an address in full to facilitate comprehension by non-native speakers. Example:

**Carrer** (instead of ~~C/~~)

**Passatge** (instead of ~~Ptge.~~)

For international addresses, the country should be written in both English and the language of the destination country. Examples:

**España/Spain**

**Suomi/Finland**

Unlike in CATALAN, it is unusual to translate the generic part of a foreign street name in English, even when it appears in running text. Thus, write:

**Avinguda Diagonal is one of the city's main thoroughfares** (not ~~Diagonal Avenue...~~).

### Towns and cities

Translate the names of towns and cities with traditional English translations. Examples:

**Vienna**

**Havana**

**Mexico City**

Leave all other such names in the source language. Examples:

**Buenos Aires**

**Sort**

**Ultramort**

For references to towns and cities in Catalonia that do not have traditional English translations, use the CATALAN (rather than Spanish) version of the name. Examples:

**Lleida** (not ~~Lérida~~)

**Girona** (not ~~Gerona~~)

Remember, because they are often spelled differently in different languages, it is important to double-check all place names in the source text, particularly transliterated ones, in case they need to be translated or otherwise changed to conform to English-language conventions.

## 7.4. Names of things

### Acronyms and initialisms

Do not translate acronyms or initialisms unless an alternative version is commonly used in English. Thus, *OCDE* (*Organització per a la Cooperació i el Desenvolupament Econòmics*) should be rendered as **OECD** (**Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development**) in English, but *PSC* (*Partit dels Socialistes de Catalunya*) should not be rendered as ~~SPC~~ (Socialist Party of Catalonia).

As a general rule, when conserving a foreign acronym or initialism, translate the full name from which it is derived on first mention, followed by the acronym to be used thereafter in parentheses. Example:

**the Catalan University and Research Grant Management Agency (AGAUR)**

### **Artistic and cultural movements**

Translate the names of artistic and cultural movements with clear and/or well-established translations in English. Examples:

**futurism**

**constructivism**

Leave all others in the original language, followed by a parenthetical translation or description, where necessary. Examples:

***rock mestizo***

***noucentisme***

### **Awards**

Translate the generic words in the names of awards (eg **prize**, **award**, **medal**). Add modifiers where necessary to prevent confusion with similarly named English-language awards. Example:

**Catalan National Prize for Literature**

### **Books and periodicals**

Do not translate the titles of books, periodicals and other publications that do not have official translations. Instead, where necessary to ensure comprehension of a text, include a translation of the title in parentheses on first mention. Examples:

***EcoUniversitat***

***Anàlisi. Quaderns de Cultura***

**Manuel de Pedrolo's *Mecanoscrit del segon origen* (Typescript of the Second Origen)**

Where an official English-language version does exist, use the English title; however, be sure to specify which version and/or edition was being referred to in the original text when that information is germane. Examples:

**Ruiz Zafón's *The Shadow of the Wind***

**Quim Monzó's *The Enormity of the Tragedy***

### **Company units and departments**

Translate the names of departments and other management units within a company. Examples:

**Human Resources Department**

**Compensation Committee**

### **Events and exhibitions**

Translate the names of congresses, exhibitions and other events when they consist of common, translatable words. Where applicable, use the official English translation. Example:

**the 8th International Conference on Internet**

**Law & Politics (IDP 2012)**

Do not translate the names of such events when they consist of an untranslatable proper noun. Examples:

**AntiQuaris**  
**ExpoHogar**

Notwithstanding the above, when an untranslatable name is derived from a series of translatable words or used as shorthand for a longer, translatable version of the event's name, consider providing a translation of the words on which it is based or the longer version of the name on first mention for added clarity. Example:

**Expodidàctica, the Educational Resources and Technology Exhibition**

### Forms of address

Translate the most common forms of address. Examples:

*Senyor* → **Mr**  
*Senyora* → **Ms**  
*Doctor(a)* → **Dr**

In contrast, except where otherwise specified by the client, more elaborate forms of address used for high-ranking officials (eg *Il·lustre*, *Magnífic*) can usually be safely omitted. For more information on this point, see section 10 below.

### Higher and international bodies and organizations

Translate the names of higher and/or international bodies and organizations with clear equivalents or official translations in English. Examples:

**Ministry of Education**  
**International Federation of Association Football**

Note, however, that the names of local and regional bodies with no traditional translation or clear equivalent in English should not be translated. In such cases, provide a brief literal or descriptive translation, as appropriate, in parentheses on first mention and use the original term or a generic reference thereafter. Examples:

***vegueria* (an obsolete Catalan territorial and administrative division)**  
***loya jirga* (a traditional Afghan “grand council” held to resolve important national matters)**

### Holidays and historical events

Translate the names of holidays and historical events with traditional translations or clear equivalents in English. Examples:

**Carnival**  
**the Epiphany**  
**the Carnation Revolution**

Leave all others in the original, followed by a brief parenthetical description where necessary to ensure comprehension of the text. Examples:

**Cinco de Mayo (5 May, celebration of Mexican culture)**  
**La Mercè**  
**glasnost**  
**Hanukkah**

## Institutions

Do not translate the names of institutions commonly known by their original names. Examples:

**the Duma** (not ~~the Deliberation~~)  
**the Knesset** (not ~~the Assembly~~)

However, for clarity's sake, you may refer to them with common-noun equivalents instead either from the first mention on or, if you have defined the foreign term on first mention, for all subsequent mentions. Examples:

**the lower house of the Russian parliament**  
**the Israeli parliament**

With regard to the translation of *Generalitat*, the UOC recommends using Catalan government.

## Museums

Translate the names of museums on first mention. Where available, the applicable source-language acronym should be used thereafter. Examples:

**the Contemporary Culture Centre of Barcelona (CCCB)**  
**the Barcelona Museum of Contemporary Art (MACBA)**

## Musical ensembles

Do not translate the names of rock bands. Examples:

**Els Pets**  
**Sopa de Cabra**

In contrast, do translate the names of city and national orchestras. Examples:

**the Barcelona Symphony and Catalonia National Orchestra (OBC)**

## Musical pieces

Translate the generic words in the titles of musical pieces. Examples:

**Chopin's Preludes**  
**Beethoven's Fifth Symphony**

## Official documents

Translate the names of official and government documents (eg constitutions, laws, gazettes, reports). Examples:

**the Statute of Autonomy**  
**the Official State Gazette**

## Political parties and unions

Translate the names of political parties and unions, except when they are commonly known by their original-language name (eg **Sinn Féin**) or when a bare translation might cause confusion (eg ~~Worker Committees~~ for *Comissions Obreres*). Where helpful, follow names left in the source language with a brief literal or descriptive translation in parentheses and, where applicable, the source-language acronym to be used thereafter. Example:

**Convergència i Unió (Convergence and Union, CiU)**



## Private companies

Do not translate the names of private companies. Examples:

**La Caixa**  
**El Corte Inglés**

However, the names of public corporations may occasionally be translated for added clarity. This is particularly true of those corporations with common counterparts in other cities or that use a standard-English translation themselves in their own English-language literature. Examples:

**the Barcelona Chamber of Commerce**  
**the Catalan Broadcasting Corporation**

## Talks and conferences

Leave the titles of talks, speeches, conferences, etc., that do not have official translations in the source language. Where necessary to ensure comprehension of the text, follow the original-language title with a translation in parentheses on first mention.

**Els màsters a l'EEES: reptes i oportunitats per a Espanya (Master's degrees in the EHEA: challenges and opportunities for Spain)**

## Television and radio

Do not translate the names of television channels and radio stations. Examples:

**La Sexta**  
**Televisión Española**  
**Cadena Ser**

## Universities

Translate the names of universities, unless otherwise specified by the university itself. Where available and reasonably idiomatic, use the university's own preferred translation. Examples:

**the University of Barcelona (UB)**  
**Pompeu Fabra University (UPF)**

When referring specifically to the UOC, use **the Universitat Oberta de Catalunya (Open University of Catalonia, UOC)** on first mention and **the UOC** thereafter. Example:

**From the start, the Universitat Oberta de Catalunya (Open University of Catalonia, UOC) has been committed to the social inclusion of people with disabilities. [...]**  
**To further this commitment and ensure accessibility, the UOC has created the Strategic Accessibility Committee.**

## Works of art

Translate the titles of works of art unless there is no clear equivalent in English or they are traditionally known by their titles in another language. Examples:

***The Scream***  
***The Starry Night***  
***The Garden of Earthly Delights***  
but ***Las Meninas***, ***Goya's Caprichos***

When a text includes both types of titles, try to be as consistent as possible.

## 8. UK/US differences

Needless to say, there are many more varieties of English than just those spoken in the United Kingdom and the United States; indeed, each of those countries is home to multiple dialects. Nevertheless, for the purposes of an English-language style guide, a comparison of the “standard” dialects of these two extensively used varieties can be instructive.

Of course, entire books have been devoted to the differences between BrE and AmE conventions with regard to spelling, vocabulary, punctuation and grammar. An exhaustive accounting thus falls well beyond the scope of this guide. Nevertheless, because, except where otherwise explicitly specified, the UOC prefers that the texts it publishes be written in BrE, this section has been included as a quick reference guide to some of the most common differences.

### 8.1. Spelling

Exceptions to spelling rules are common on both sides of the Atlantic. Therefore, when in doubt, the UOC recommends using the preferred spelling provided in the Oxford English Dictionary (British and World English version) ([www.oxforddictionaries.com](http://www.oxforddictionaries.com)) for BrE and the preferred spelling provided in the Merriam-Webster Dictionary ([www.merriam-webster.com](http://www.merriam-webster.com)) for AmE. Please note that, unlike many other authoritative BrE sources, the OED uses the **-ize** spellings of words like **organize** and **maximize**. For more information on this difference, see the relevant section below.

Notwithstanding the plethora of exceptions, some of the most common differences in BrE and AmE spelling conventions are listed below:

#### **-ae-/-e- and -oe-/-e-**

BrE has retained the digraphs **-ae-** and **-oe-** in certain words of primarily French, Latin and Greek origin that AmE spells with a bare **e**. Examples:

<b>-ae-/-e- and -oe-/-e-</b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
paediatrician	pediatrician
anaemia	anemia
amoeba	ameba
oestrogen	estrogen

However, some words can be, and often are, spelled with the digraph in AmE, too, although the bare **e** spelling is also accepted. Examples:

**aesthetics** (or **esthetics**)  
**archaeology** (or **archeology**)

Likewise, certain words may be spelled with either the digraph or the bare **e** in BrE. Examples:

**encyclopaedia** (or **encyclopedia**)  
**mediaeval** (or **medieval**)

**-ce/-se**

BrE generally uses the spelling **-ce** for nouns and **-se** for verbs. Examples:

**a licence but to license**  
**some practice but to practise**

AmE preserves this distinction with some words (eg **some advice** but **to advise**) but in other cases always uses **-se** (eg **defense, license, offense**)

**-e before suffixes**

Unlike AmE, BrE retains the final silent e in certain words when adding suffixes. Compare:

<b>-e before suffixes</b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
acknowledgement	acknowledgment
ageing	aging
judgement	judgment
likeable	likable
saleable	salable
sizeable	sizable

Nevertheless, for some words, both spellings are accepted in both AmE and BrE. AmE tends to be more flexible than BrE in this regard. Examples:

**acknowledg(e)ment**  
**judg(e)ment**

**-ise/-ize and -yse/-yze**

While BrE often prefers to spell this and related suffixes (**-isation, -ising, etc.**) with an **s**, AmE uses only the version with **z**. Compare:

<b>-ise/-ize</b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
organise/organize	organize
maximise/maximize	maximize
philosophise/philosophize	philosophize

This notwithstanding, the *OED* prefers to spell these words according to their etymological origin, the Greek root **-izo** and thus also uses the **z** spelling.

Similar differences are found with the suffix **-yse/-yze**. Compare:

<b>-yse/-yze</b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
analyse	analyze
catalyse	catalyze
hydrolyse	hydrolyze
paralyse	paralyze

In this case, the *OED* uses the **s** spelling, as these words are formed from a different Greek root, *lyo*, rather than from **-izo**. For more information on *OED* spelling conventions, see [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oxford\\_spelling](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oxford_spelling).

Separately, please note that some words are always spelled with an **s** in all varieties of English. This is generally because the **-ise** is actually part of a longer component of the word, such as **-cise**, **-prise** or **-vise**, rather than a separate suffix in itself. Nevertheless, a smaller group are always spelled with **z**. Examples:

<b>Always -ise</b>	<b>Always -ize</b>
advise	capsize
comprise	prize
compromise	seize
excise	size
revise	
supervise	
televisе	

### **-ll/-l-**

BrE generally doubles the final **l** before adding **-ed**, **-ing**, **-er**, **-est** or **-or** in words with an unstressed final syllable. AmE generally does not. Examples:

<b>-ll/-l- before -ed, -ing, -er, -est, -or</b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
cancellation	cancellation ( <i>although cancellation is also accepted</i> )
labelled	labeled
modelling	modeling
traveller	traveler

In contrast, BrE often uses a single **l** in words formed from monosyllabic root words ending in **ll** and many of their derivatives, whereas AmE generally retains the double **l**. Compare:

<b>-ll/-l in words formed from monosyllabic root words ending in ll</b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
enrol	enroll
enrolment	enrollment
fulfil	fulfill
fulfilment	fulfillment
instalment	installment
wilful	willful

### ***-ogue/-og***

BrE generally uses the ending **-ogue**, while AmE generally prefers **-og**. Compare:

<b><i>-ogue/-og</i></b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
catalogue	catalog ( <i>although catalogue is also used</i> )
dialogue	dialog
monologue	monolog

### ***-our/-or***

Words ending in an unstressed **-our/-or** in which the vowel sound is reduced (ie the ending is pronounced **-er**) generally take a **u** in BrE but not in AmE. Compare:

<b><i>-our/-or when the vowel sound is reduced</i></b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
behaviour	behavior
colour	color
favour	favor
neighbour	neighbor

The **u** is used in AmE, too, when the vowel sound is not reduced (ie when the ending is pronounced **-or**). Examples:

**paramour**  
**troubadour**

**-re/-er**

Certain words, mainly of French, Latin and Greek origin, that originally ended in a consonant + **-re** retain that spelling in BrE but are spelled with a final **-er** in AmE. This mainly occurs in words in which the **-re/-er** is unstressed and is particularly common when the preceding consonant is a **b** or a **t**. Examples:

<b>-re/-er</b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
centre	center
fibre	fiber
litre	liter
theatre	theater

Note, however, that BrE uses **metre** for the unit of length, but **meter** for the measuring instrument.

Likewise, some words retain the original **-re** spelling in AmE, too, particularly when it is preceded by a **c** or when the original French pronunciation has been retained. Examples:

acre  
 massacre  
 mediocre  
 genre  
 double entendre  
 but also **macabre**, **timbre**

**-t/-ed in past tenses**

In BrE, the past forms of certain verbs may be spelled with a **-t** or **-ed**, whereas in AmE they almost exclusively end with **-ed**. Compare:

<b>-t/-ed in past tenses</b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
burnt	burned
dreamt	dreamed
learnt	learned

That said, both spellings are understood and accepted in both BrE and AmE,

Note, too, that BrE and AmE tend to use different forms for the past participle of the verb **to get**. Whereas BrE generally uses the forms **get-got-got**, except in certain set phrases (eg **ill-gotten gains**), AmE generally uses **get-got-gotten**, except with the possessive **have got** (eg **I've got three pens**). Compare:

BrE: **Information they had got from the internet.**

AmE: **Information they had gotten from the internet.**

### ***-wards/-ward***

While both **-wards** and **-ward** can be found on both sides of the Atlantic, BrE tends to favour **-wards**, while AmE tends to favour **-ward**. Thus:

<b><i>-wards/-ward</i></b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
backwards	backward
forwards	forward
towards	toward

This is particularly true when the words being formed function as adverbs. In contrast, when they function as adjectives or as part of a phrasal verb, the suffix **-ward** generally prevails on both sides of the Atlantic. Examples:

**a backward glance**  
**an untoward remark**  
**to look forward to**

### **Other spelling differences**

In addition to the above, several common words that do not fall into any of the above categories are also generally spelled differently in BrE and AmE. These include, among others:

<b>Other spelling differences</b>	
<b>BrE</b>	<b>AmE</b>
aluminium	aluminum
cheque ( <i>n.</i> )	check ( <i>n.</i> )
grey	gray
jewellery	jewelry
mould	mold
per cent	percent
plough	plow
programme ( <i>except in computing</i> )	program
sceptical	skeptical
tyre ( <i>n.</i> )	tire ( <i>n.</i> )

## **8.2. Dates**

In BrE, the date tends to be formatted **day + month + year** with no internal punctuation. In contrast, in AmE, it tends to be formatted **month + day + year** with a comma separating the final two elements. Thus:

BrE: **1 January 2012**  
 AmE: **January 1, 2012**

In both varieties, ordinal numbers may also be used to indicate the day (eg **1st January 2012** or **January 1st, 2012**); however, the UOC prefers that cardinal numbers be used instead.

### 8.3. Punctuation

For a more detailed discussion of English punctuation, please see Sp. This section merely addresses some of the most common differences between BrE and AmE conventions.

#### Capitalization

While both sentence-case capitalization (capitalization of the first word and any proper nouns in a title or headline) and title-case capitalization (capitalization of the first and last word, as well as any function words in between) are used in both varieties of English, sentence-case capitalization is perhaps more common in BrE and title-case capitalization more common in AmE. Accordingly, the UOC prefers to use sentence-case capitalization for many of its texts. Thus:

#### **University management: towards greater interaction with the environment**

For more information on the UOC's specific preferences with regard to capitalization, please see section 2 above.

#### Full stops

In BrE, full stops are used for truncations, but not for contractions. They are likewise omitted from initialisms. In contrast, AmE generally uses full stops for both contractions and initialisms. Compare:

Full stops in initialisms	
BrE	AmE
Dr	Dr.
Mr	Mr.
UK	U.K.
EU	E.U.

#### Hyphenation

BrE often hyphenates compound nouns and adjectives that are written as a single unit in AmE. For example:

Hyphenation of compound nouns and adjectives	
BrE	AmE
break-up	breakup
mouth-watering	mouthwatering
north-east	northeast



Likewise, BrE often uses a hyphen where AmE does not to separate prefixes from the words to which they are attached, particularly in cases where the final letter of the prefix and the first letter of the root word are the same or when omission of the hyphen could lead to mispronunciation. Compare:

Hyphenation to aid pronunciation	
BrE	AmE
co-worker	coworker
pre-eminent	preeminent
re-enter	reenter

However, hyphens are generally used in both varieties of English to separate a prefix from a capitalized noun. Examples:

**mid-Atlantic**  
**post-Renaissance**  
**sub-Saharan**

Likewise, both varieties often use hyphens to distinguish between words with distinct meanings that would otherwise be homographs, such as **recreation** (activity done for enjoyment) and **re-creation** (something created anew) or **unionized** (organized in a labour union) and **un-ionized** (not ionized).

Notwithstanding the above, in practice both varieties often accept both hyphenated and unhyphenated spellings of a single word. It is thus above all important to be consistent within each text. In other words, do not use **pre-eminent** on first mention and **preeminent** a few pages later.

### Quotation marks and placement of end punctuation

AmE generally uses double quotation marks to indicate direct quotations and single quotation marks for nested quotations within them. It also generally places full stops and commas inside the closing quotation mark, although placement of other forms of punctuation (eg dashes, question marks, exclamation points) depends on whether they pertain to the quote itself. Example:

**“The virtual companionship,” Arroyo added, “was wonderful, and in many cases it has turned into real and lasting friendships.”**

**According to Mr Esteban, the conference represents “a critical review of the adaptation of healthcare technology to the environment.”**

**“How many times have you heard him cry ‘Impossible!’ only to watch him go on to get the job done?” he asked.**

BrE usage varies, with some sources, such as *The Economist*, following some of the same conventions as AmE and others, such as Oxford University Press (OUP), essentially doing the opposite, that is, using single quotation marks to indicate direct quotations and double quotation marks to set off any further quotations within them. Under this system, end punctuation is only placed inside the closing quotation marks when it forms part of the sentence being quoted. Example:

**‘The virtual companionship’, Arroyo added, ‘was wonderful, and in many cases it has turned into real and lasting friendships.’**

**According to Mr Esteban, the conference represents ‘a critical review of the adaptation of healthcare technology to the environment’.**

**‘How many times have you heard him cry “Impossible!” only to watch him go on to get the job done?’ he asked.**

The UOC recommends following the guidelines established by *The Economist* for quotations in its texts: [economist.com/style-guide/inverted-commas-quotation-marks](http://economist.com/style-guide/inverted-commas-quotation-marks). In short, single quotation marks are only used for quotations inside quotations and punctuation goes outside unless it forms an integral part of the quoted text.

**“The virtual companionship”, Arroyo added, “was wonderful, and in many cases it has turned into real and lasting friendships.”**

**According to Mr Esteban, the conference represents “a critical review of the adaptation of healthcare technology to the environment”.**

**“How many times have you heard him cry ‘Impossible!’ only to watch him go on to get the job done?” he asked.**

#### 8.4. Prepositions and articles

In addition to the above differences, BrE and AmE also sometimes follow different conventions with regard to the use of prepositions and articles. Some of the most common examples include:

Prepositions and articles: different conventions	
BrE	AmE
You live <u>in/on</u> Main Street.	You live <u>on</u> Main Street.
You enrol <u>on</u> a course.	You enroll <u>in</u> a course.
You convalesce <u>in</u> hospital.	You convalesce <u>in the</u> hospital.
You go out <u>at</u> the weekend.	You go out <u>on</u> the weekend.
You play <u>in</u> a team.	You play <u>on</u> a team.
An office is open Monday <u>to</u> Friday.	An office is open Monday <u>through/to</u> Friday.
You study English <u>at</u> university.	You study English <u>in</u> university.
You ring/call someone <u>on</u> 867-5309.	You call someone <u>at</u> 867-5309.

Additional examples can be found at [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison\\_of\\_American\\_and\\_British\\_English](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_American_and_British_English).

### 8.5. Vocabulary

Although BrE and AmE are (for the most part!) mutually comprehensible, there are nevertheless many lexical differences between them, some subtle, others quite stark and still others potentially problematic. The online *Oxford English Dictionary* offers a helpful introductory list to some of the most common differences at: [oxforddictionaries.com/words/british-and-american-terms](http://oxforddictionaries.com/words/british-and-american-terms).

### 8.6. Helpful links

There are many informative and engaging online resources on the differences between BrE and AmE. Interested readers might begin with the following Wikipedia entries:

- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison\\_of\\_American\\_and\\_British\\_English](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_American_and_British_English)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American\\_and\\_British\\_English\\_spelling\\_differences](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_and_British_English_spelling_differences)

Also of interest are the following blogs:

- *Not One-Off Britishisms* ([britishisms.wordpress.com](http://britishisms.wordpress.com)): An American English professor reports on the seepage of traditional Britishisms into AmE.
- *Separated by a Common Language* ([separatedbyacommonlanguage.blogspot.com](http://separatedbyacommonlanguage.blogspot.com)): An American linguist living in the UK reflects on differences between BrE and AmE.
- *The Best of British* ([effingpot.com](http://effingpot.com)): A Brit and former resident of Texas offers a comically annotated list of differences in BrE and AmE vocabulary.

## 9. Gender

English lacks a gender-neutral singular third-person personal pronoun. Like many languages, it has often traditionally used masculine forms (**he, him, his, himself**) to make generalizations by default. Example:

**Each student must submit his paper by midnight on 30 June.**

However, in keeping with more modern usage, the UOC recommends using gender-neutral formulations wherever possible, although never at the expense of ensuring a natural, idiomatic style.

In speech, and increasingly in writing, the pronoun **they** and its inflected forms (**their, them, themselves**) are often used to get around this problem; indeed, there is a growing evidence-based movement that champions the use of the so-called ‘singular **they**’. According to this usage, the above example might be rendered:

**Each student must submit their paper by midnight on 30 June.**

Rightly or wrongly, however, many people are still irked by this usage. It is thus often preferable to seek a less controversial solution. To this end, one common alternative is to restate the entire sentence to make it plural. Thus, our example might become:

**All students must submit their papers by midnight on 30 June.**

Another is to omit the problematic reference altogether, particularly when it does not add information that cannot be otherwise inferred. For example:

**Papers must be submitted by midnight on 30 June.**

When the sentence in question provides instructions, you may also consider using the gender-neutral **you** or an imperative formulation. Examples:

**You should submit your paper by midnight on 30 June.**

**Submit your paper by midnight on 30 June.**

Finally, on rare occasions, constructions such as **he/she, s/he** or **he or she** (or the corresponding inflected forms) may be used, thus giving, for example:

**Each student must submit his or her paper by midnight on 30 June.**

Bear in mind, however, that such constructions are increasingly considered unwieldy and their overuse can make a text sound stilted. They are thus best avoided as much as possible. Exceptions may be made for certain types of official forms and documents.

### Gender-neutral terms

In many cases, gender-neutral terms now exist for traditionally gendered expressions. Examples:

**chairman → chair or chairperson**

**steward/stewardess → flight attendant**

**policeman → police officer**

Use your best judgement for when their use might be appropriate.

## Re-gendering

Be sure not to re-gender sentences that already use gender-neutral terms by adding gendered phrases. For instance, phrases such as ~~male nurse~~ or ~~female executive~~, which may unwittingly reinforce sex-role stereotypes, should be avoided unless the author is intentionally drawing a distinction based on gender. Even then, the sentence can often be restated in a more gender-neutral fashion. For example, the sentence **Female executives account for only 30% of the total number** could be rewritten as **Women account for only 30% of executives**.

Where it is necessary to include such a phrase, use the modifier **female** or **woman/women** rather than ~~lady~~ or ~~girl~~ to avoid negative and/or dated connotations.

## Equal treatment

When mentioning both a man and a woman in a single text, be sure to use the same treatment with regard to forms of address for both. Example:

**Mr Kent and Ms Lane** (not ~~Mr Kent and Lois Lane~~)

## Alternating gendered terms

When it is deemed absolutely necessary to use both a masculine and a feminine term, be sure to alternate which comes first. Example:

**aunts and uncles [...]** **uncles and aunts**

Alternatively, in some texts you may be able to alternate between examples involving one gender and examples involving the other. Texts about parenting, for instance, often use alternating examples involving daughters and sons. That said, this usage can be confusing and it is thus essential when following it to ensure the coherence and readability of the text as a whole.

## 10. Names and forms of address

How names are treated and what is considered an appropriate form of address can vary greatly from one language to another and even within a single language. The UOC offers the following guidelines for English.

### Initials

In running text, do not combine the use of titles with a person's first name or initial. Instead, use the person's full name on first mention without a title and use **Mr** or **Ms** followed by only the surname thereafter. Examples:

First mention: **Noam Chomsky** (not ~~**Professor Noam Chomsky**~~)

Subsequent mentions: **Professor Chomsky**

### Common titles

Use **Ms** when referring to a woman, unless you are sure that she prefers otherwise. This is because **Mrs** refers to a married woman and thus might be construed as presumptuous, while **Miss** has traditionally been used for unmarried women and might be construed as condescending. In contrast, **Ms** denotes neither a specific age range nor a specific marital status and is thus acceptable in all contexts except where another title is explicitly preferred.

When choosing between **Ms** and **Mr** in conjunction with an unfamiliar foreign name, make sure that you are certain of the gender of the person in question.

Maintain the title **Dr** when it is used in the source language, even if it refers to a doctor of something other than medicine.

### Foreign titles

Avoid foreign titles that are not customary in English (eg **Dipl.-Ing.** (from the German **Diplom-Ingenieur**) or **Ir.** (from the French **Ingénieur**)), replacing them with **Mr** or **Ms**, where necessary.

### Honorifics

Honorifics are used less frequently in English than in CATALAN and can usually be safely omitted in translations. Compare, for instance, the following references to the mayor of Barcelona, as they might be used in the programme for a conference:

*Excel·lentíssim Sr. Xavier Trias, alcalde de Barcelona*

**Mr Xavier Trias, mayor of Barcelona**

Common exceptions to this rule include the use of honorifics with royalty and certain high-ranking judiciary, political and religious figures, particularly in formal and/or ceremonious contexts. In most other contexts, especially with regard to political figures, a simple **Ms** or **Mr** will suffice. Examples:

**Her Majesty the Queen**

**the Honourable Judge Baltasar Garzón**

**His Holiness Pope Benedict XVI**

## Bibliography

This list does not include all the reference works needed by those working with the English language. This is simply a list of the resources used to produce this guide.

*British National Corpus.*

<<http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/>>

**Brown, L. (ed)** (1993), *The New Shorter Oxford English Dictionary*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

*Corpus of Contemporary American English.*

<<http://www.informatics.sussex.ac.uk/departement/docs/punctuation/node00.html>>

*Diccionari de la llengua catalana.* Institut d'Estudis Catalans.

<<http://dlc.iec.cat/>>

*Economist.com Style Guide.*

<<http://www.economist.com/research/styleguide/>>

*Free Dictionary.*

<<http://www.thefreedictionary.com/>>

*Guia lingüística (July 2010), Servei Lingüístic de la Universitat Oberta de Catalunya.*

<[http://uoc.edu/serveilinguistic/pdf/Guia\\_espanol\\_JULIO-2010.pdf](http://uoc.edu/serveilinguistic/pdf/Guia_espanol_JULIO-2010.pdf)>

*Guía lingüística (July 2010), Servei Lingüístic de la Universitat Oberta de Catalunya.*

<[http://uoc.edu/serveilinguistic/pdf/Guia\\_catalana\\_JULIOL-2010.pdf](http://uoc.edu/serveilinguistic/pdf/Guia_catalana_JULIOL-2010.pdf)>

**Heaton, J.B.** (1995), *Prepositions and Adverbial Particles*. Essex: Longman.

**Hevly, M.L.** (1995-2005), *Gramàtica anglesa, Vols. I-V*. Moià: J. Ruaix.

**Quirk, R., et al.** (1995), *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*. New York: Longman.

**Sinclair, J. (ed)** (1992), *Collins Cobuild English Grammar*. London: HarperCollins.

**Swan, M.** (1995), *Practical English Usage (2nd Edition)*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

*The Chicago Manual of Style (14th Edition)* (1993). Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

*The Guardian, Observer and guardian.co.uk Style Guide.*

<<http://www.guardian.co.uk/styleguide>>

**Trask, L.** (1997), *Guide to Punctuation*. University of Sussex.

<<http://www.informatics.sussex.ac.uk/departement/docs/punctuation/node00.html>>

*Webster's Collegiate Dictionary (5th Edition)* (1937). Springfield: G & C Merriam.

*Webster's Dictionary of English Usage* (1989). Springfield: Merriam-Webster.

*Webster's Dictionary of Synonyms* (1942). Springfield: Merriam-Webster.

**Wheeler, M., et al.** (1999), *Catalan: A Comprehensive Grammar*. London: Routledge.

*WordReference.com.*

<<http://wordreference.com>>

*Visca.com.*

<<http://visca.com/>>

# Practical Guide to English Usage